

# JAPANESE 1 From Zero! 1



**Extensive Grammar!**

**Learn Hiragana!**

**Workbook Included!**

**George Trombley Jr.**

**Yukari Takenaka**

**Learn to  
Speak, Read  
and Write  
Japanese!**

George Trombley has worked as a professional Japanese interpreter for over 20 years specializing in business, technical, medical, and entertainment simultaneous interpreting. In 1998, George and Yukari Takenaka created Japanese From Zero's live Japanese language classes in Las Vegas, NV, and developed their classes into the *Japanese From Zero!* book series and the YesJapan.com interactive Japanese language education website.

Distributed worldwide by:

From Zero, LLC  
10624 S. Eastern Ave. #A769,  
Henderson, NV 89052.

Copyright © 2014 YesJapan Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Printed in USA & England.

ISBN-10: 0976998122

ISBN-13: 978-097699812

1st edition, 2006

2nd edition, 2008

3rd edition, (major update) 2011

3rd edition (minor update), November, 2011

3rd edition (minor update), August, 2012

3rd edition (minor update), September, 2012

4th edition (skipped due to bad luck)

5th edition (minor update), September, 2014

JapaneseFromZero.com

# Japanese From Zero! Book 1

## – CONTENTS –

<b>□ Welcome!</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Introduction</b>	
□ Welcome to JAPANESE FROM ZERO!	
□ Japanese characters	
□ Japanese punctuation facts	
□ About the pre-lessons	
□ About the authors	
□ WRITE IN THIS BOOK!	
<b>□ Pre-Lesson A: Pronunciation Guide &amp; The Basics</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Why Learn Hiragana?</b>	
<b>The Japanese Writing Systems</b>	
<b>Japanese Pronunciation</b>	<b>14</b>
□ Normal vowels	
□ Double vowels	
□ Long versus short sounds	
□ Double consonants	
<b>□ Pre-Lesson B: Basic Counting</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>The Basic Numbers</b>	
□ Single Numbers	
<b>Culture Clip: Why Two Versions?</b>	
<b>The Counting Units</b>	<b>18</b>
□ The teens	
□ The tens	
□ Combining tens and singles	
□ The hundreds and thousands	
□ Putting all the numbers together	
<b>Lesson Activities</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>□ Pre-Lesson C: First Meeting</b>	<b>22</b>
<b>Culture clip: Bowing</b>	
<b>Conversation かいわ</b>	<b>23</b>
□ Meeting someone for the first time	

- Asking someone their age
- Learning to say your age
- How old do I look?

<b>Speaking Naturally しぜんにはなすこと</b> .....	26
□ My name is...	
<b>Lesson Activities</b> .....	27

## □ Pre-Lesson D: Coming and Going..... 29

<b>New Phrases あたらしいことば</b> .....	29
□ Daily Greetings	
□ Leaving and returning home	
<b>Speaking Naturally しぜんにはなすこと</b> .....	31
□ The silent "U" sound	
<b>Lesson Activities</b> .....	31
<b>Vocabulary Groups</b> .....	32
● the body	
● bed and bath	

## □ Lesson 1: Creating Simple Sentences ..... 34

<b>Grammar ぶんぽう</b> .....	35
□ Plurals	
□ Using <i>desu</i> to make a simple statement	
□ Making a question using <i>ka</i>	
□ The question word <i>nani</i>	
<b>Culture Clip: Using <i>san</i> for Mr., Mrs., etc.</b>	
<b>Hiragana あいうえお</b> .....	38

<b>Writing Basics かくときのきほん</b> .....	40
□ What is a stroke?	
□ Why use brushes to write?	
□ Different types of brush strokes	
□ The importance of the various styles	

<b>Writing Points かくポイント</b> .....	41
□ The difference between あ (a) and お (o)	
□ Writing left-to-right and top-to-bottom	

<b>Lesson Activities</b> .....	46
<b>Sentence Building ぶんのつくり</b> .....	48

<b>□ Lesson 2: Working with a Topic.....</b>	<b>49</b>
Culture Clip: Sushi and Sashimi	
Cool Tools クール・ツール.....	51
Grammar ぶんぽう .....	51
□ The topic marker <i>wa</i>	
□ Using <i>wa</i> in a variety of sentences	
□ The question words <i>dore</i> and <i>docchi</i>	
□ Following the same pattern when answering	
□ Using what you know to learn more	
Speaking Naturally しぜんにはなすこと .....	54
□ Dropping the topic of a sentence	
Hiragana かきくけこ .....	56
Writing Points かくポイント .....	57
□ The dakuten	
□ Writing <i>が</i> ( <i>ga</i> ) the correct way	
□ The different versions of <i>き</i> ( <i>ki</i> )	
Lesson Activities.....	62
Sentence Building ぶんのつくり .....	66
Vocabulary Groups.....	67
● family	
● greetings and farewells	
<b>□ Lesson 3: Possession .....</b>	<b>68</b>
Culture Clip: Interesting information about bo <	
Grammar ぶんぽう .....	70
□ The question word <i>dare</i>	
□ Using <i>wa</i> with <i>dare</i>	
□ Assuming the topic based on context	
□ Starting sentences with or without question words	
□ How to start a sentence with a question word using <i>が</i>	
□ Making words possessive with the particle <i>no</i>	
□ Showing possession of objects using <i>no</i>	
Hiragana さしすせそ .....	77
Writing Points かくポイント .....	78
□ The different versions of <i>さ</i> ( <i>sa</i> ) and <i>そ</i> ( <i>so</i> )	

<b>Lesson Activities.....</b>	<b>83</b>
<b>Sentence Building ぶんのつくり .....</b>	<b>87</b>
<b>Vocabulary Groups.....</b>	<b>88</b>
● animals	
<b>□ Lesson 4: Colors and Adjectives.....</b>	<b>89</b>
<b>Culture Clip: Green is Blue?</b>	
<b>Grammar ぶんぽう .....</b>	<b>91</b>
❑ The particle <i>to</i>	
❑ Making nouns into adjectives using <i>no</i>	
❑ Using colors to describe	
❑ い adjectives	
<b>Hiragana たちつてと .....</b>	<b>96</b>
<b>Writing Points かくポイント .....</b>	<b>97</b>
❑ The double consonants	
❑ The double consonant sound analysis	
❑ Which version of <i>zu</i> and <i>ji</i> should be used?	
<b>Lesson Activities.....</b>	<b>102</b>
<b>Sentence Building ぶんのつくり .....</b>	<b>106</b>
<b>Vocabulary Groups.....</b>	<b>107</b>
● things around the house	
<b>□ Lesson 5: Likes and Dislikes .....</b>	<b>108</b>
<b>New Adjectives あたらしい けいようし</b>	
<b>Grammar ぶんぽう .....</b>	<b>109</b>
❑ The particle <i>が</i> with <i>すき</i> and <i>き</i> <i>ra</i> <i>い</i>	
❑ Using <i>jana</i> <i>い</i> to make things negative	
❑ The "one" pronoun	
❑ Using <i>ja</i> <i>あ</i> to say "Well then..."	
<b>Speaking Naturally しぜんに はなすこと .....</b>	<b>111</b>
❑ Using <i>き</i> <i>ra</i> <i>い</i> versus <i>すき</i> <i>jana</i> <i>い</i>	
<b>Hiragana なにぬねの .....</b>	<b>114</b>
<b>Lesson Activities.....</b>	<b>119</b>
❑ Short dialogue	
❑ Short dialogue activities	
❑ More words you can write	

Sentence Building ぶんのつくり .....	124
Vocabulary Groups.....	125
● sports and entertainment	
● fruit	
<b>□ Lesson 6: Wanting and Not Wanting .....</b>	<b>126</b>
Culture Clip カルチャー クリップ	
New Adjectives あたらしい けいようし	
Grammar ぶんぽう .....	128
□ Making adjectives negative	
□ The colors as negative adjectives	
□ Wanting and not wanting	
□ Tricky uses of the particle の	
□ Numbers and money	
Hiragana はひふへほ.....	132
Writing Points かくポイント .....	134
□ What is that circle?	
□ Why isn't ふ written as HU?	
□ The easy way to write ふ (fu)	
Special Usage とくべつな つかいかた.....	136
□ The topic marker は (wa)	
□ The direction marker へ (e)	
Lesson Activities.....	140
Sentence Building ぶんのつくり .....	144
Vocabulary Groups.....	145
● transportation	
<b>□ Lesson 7: Locations.....</b>	<b>146</b>
New Adjectives あたらしい けいようし	
Word Usage ことばの つかいかた	
□ Yoくない vs いくない	
Grammar ぶんぽう .....	148
□ Using で mo	
□ The rules for using は (wa) and が (ga)	
Mini Conversation ミニかいわ J→E	
Hiragana まみむめも .....	153

<b>Lesson Activities.....</b>	158
<b>Sentence Building ぶんのつくり.....</b>	162
<b>Vocabulary Groups.....</b>	163
● more animals	
<b>□ Lesson 8: Dates and Past Tense.....</b>	164
Culture Clip: Christmas and other holidays in Japan	
<b>Cool Tools クール・ツール.....</b>	167
<b>Months つき</b>	
<b>Grammar ぶんぽう .....</b>	168
□ Making sentences in the past tense	
□ Saying dates with month and day of the month	
<b>Hiragana やゆよわをん .....</b>	172
<b>Special Usage とくべつな つかいかた.....</b>	174
□ The particle を (wo)	
<b>Lesson Activities.....</b>	177
<b>Sentence Building ぶんのつくり.....</b>	181
<b>Vocabulary Groups.....</b>	182
● food and drink	
<b>□ Lesson 9: Days, Weeks, and Years .....</b>	183
Culture Clip: Japan's New Year	
<b>Grammar ぶんぽう .....</b>	185
□ Expressing the year	
□ Saying complete dates including the year	
□ Next Friday, last March, etc.	
<b>Hiragana らりるれろ .....</b>	188
<b>Lesson Activities.....</b>	193
<b>Sentence Building ぶんのつくり .....</b>	197
<b>Vocabulary Groups.....</b>	197
● nature	

<b>□ Lesson 10: Asking for Things .....</b>	<b>198</b>
<b>Grammar ぶんぽう .....</b>	<b>199</b>
□ Please give me (standard)	
□ Please give me (polite)	
□ The difference between ください and おねがいします	
□ The particle も	
□ A funny problem with particle choice	
□ Sizes	
<b>Compound Hiragana.....</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>Writing Points かくポイント .....</b>	<b>205</b>
□ The correct way to write compound hiragana	
□ Compound Hiragana	
<b>Lesson Activities.....</b>	<b>214</b>
<b>Sentence Building ぶんのつくり .....</b>	<b>217</b>
<b>Vocabulary Groups.....</b>	<b>218</b>
● direction words	
● things around the house II	
<b>□ Lesson 11: Counting Objects.....</b>	<b>219</b>
<b>Explanation せつめい</b>	
<b>Counters カウンター</b>	
<b>Grammar ぶんぽう .....</b>	<b>223</b>
□ The counters and particles	
□ More	
<b>Hiragana: The Next Step.....</b>	<b>227</b>
<b>Lesson Activities.....</b>	<b>228</b>
<b>Sentence Building ぶんのつくり .....</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>Vocabulary Groups.....</b>	<b>232</b>
● at school	
● at the office, etc.	
● insects	
<b>□ Lesson 12: Japanese Verbs.....</b>	<b>233</b>
<b>Grammar ぶんぽう .....</b>	<b>234</b>
□ Polite versus informal speaking	

- ❑ Conjugating verbs into the polite form
- ❑ Location particles に and へ
- ❑ Time particle に
- ❑ Time particle usage with きょう、せんしゅう、らいねん etc.
- ❑ Sentence structure using verbs
- ❑ Using the verb わかる
- ❑ Languages and nationalities

<b>Lesson Activities.....</b>	<b>246</b>
Sentence Building ぶんのつくり.....	251

## ❑ **Lesson 13: Telling Time .....** **252**

Time じかん

<b>Grammar ぶんぽう .....</b>	<b>254</b>
❑ AM and PM	
❑ Half past	
❑ Using the particle から	
❑ Using the particle まで	

<b>Lesson Activities.....</b>	<b>261</b>
Sentence Building ぶんのつくり.....	268

## ❑ **Appendix: Everyday Phrases .....** **270**

## ❑ **Appendix: Last Names .....** **274**

- ❑ Common Japanese surnames and their meaning

## ❑ **Appendix: Girls' Given Names .....** **276**

- ❑ Common Japanese given names for girls

## ❑ **Appendix: Boys' Given Names.....** **278**

- ❑ Common Japanese given names for boys

## ❑ **Answer Key.....** **279**

<b>English Glossary .....</b>	<b>299</b>
<b>Ro-maji Glossary .....</b>	<b>309</b>
<b>Kana Glossary .....</b>	<b>319</b>
<b>Japan Map.....</b>	<b>321</b>
<b>Hiragana Chart.....</b>	<b>322</b>



## Introduction

### Welcome to JAPANESE FROM ZERO!

LEARNING JAPANESE can be intimidating at first, but don't worry! Our method is designed to lead you step-by-step through the basics of Japanese grammar.

Whether you're learning Japanese for business, travel, or to make new friends, we've created these lessons to make sure you feel confident in your ability to SPEAK, READ, and WRITE what you've learned.

#### □ Japanese characters

WHAT ARE THESE STRANGE LETTERS? The Japanese language uses a set of symbols called *hiragana* (to spell Japanese words), *katakana* (to spell foreign words), and *kanji* (to represent entire words or names). Over the course of BOOK 1, we will teach you groups of hiragana piece-by-piece to gradually build up your understanding and familiarity.

Our lessons begin with *ro-maji* (Japanese words spelled with Roman letters), but as each lesson progresses, we will continually substitute the hiragana you've learned. By the end of this book, you'll not only be able to speak Japanese, but read and write it too!

#### □ Japanese punctuation facts

HERE ARE SOME QUICK FACTS about Japanese writing to help you get started.

##### UPPERCASE/LOWERCASE

In English, we learn to write both A and a, but in Japanese, タ is always タ no matter where you find it in a sentence. There are no upper and lower cases in Japanese.

##### QUESTION MARKS

Written Japanese doesn't (normally) use the question mark punctuation (?). Instead the hiragana カ (ka) is placed at the end of a sentence to indicate a question.

##### **Example**

Nan desu ka. = What is it?

Both are questions, but in Japanese, using ka does the trick. (More on this in Lesson 1.)

PERIODS (or "What's that funny-looking circle?")

### **Example**

Kore wa hon desu. → converted to hiragana becomes → これは ほんです。

This punctuation mark 。 does exactly the same job as the period you normally use to end a sentence in English.

### **□ About the pre-lessons**

Before this book introduces grammar concepts in lesson 1, there will be 4 pre-lessons.

The pre-lessons are designed to give you some of the tools needed to begin to interact with native Japanese speakers. You will learn pronunciation, basic counting, initial conversation phrases, and other basic concepts.

Once you complete the pre-lessons, you will learn many key Japanese grammar concepts and how to read and write hiragana.

### **□ About the authors**

Author George Trombley is a professional Japanese interpreter who over the past 16 years has interpreted at corporations such as Microsoft, IBM, NTT DoCoMo, Lucent Technologies, and in countries throughout North America, Europe, Asia and the Middle East.

George Trombley and his wife Yukari Takenaka formed the YesJapan Language School in 1998 in Las Vegas, NV. Since then, the live classroom courses have formed the basis for the *Japanese From Zero!* textbook series and the YesJapan.com interactive language learning website.

### **□ WRITE IN THIS BOOK!**

This book is your tool to learning in a way that will stick! Learning Japanese is hard work so we want your knowledge to last forever. *Japanese From Zero!* is designed to be an interactive workbook where you can take personal notes, add new words or phrases of your own, and develop your writing skills from hopeless/crazy/illegible (we all start that way!) to expert-level.

Every time you write in this book, you're making your connection to Japanese a little bit stronger - we guarantee it!

Ganbatte kudasai!

George Trombley

Yukari Takenaka

Pre-Lesson



Level ①

## Pronunciation Guide & The Basics

Understanding Japanese phonetics



### A Why Learn Hiragana?

It's important to know how powerful your Japanese will be if you can read and write it. Learning to read and write Japanese gives your brain a turbo boost in comprehension. You will immediately see how knowing the hiragana benefits your Japanese pronunciation.

All of your life you have been reading the alphabet a certain way. You have learned that the letter combination "TO" sounds like the number 2. This instinct will be hard to overcome at first. In Japanese, "TO" is read as "TOW". If you read this like you were taught in grade school your Japanese accent would be pretty bad! But don't worry - this book will teach you the correct way to read the Japanese hiragana writing system.

Before you can learn hiragana and katakana, you will need to know how Japanese is represented in the Roman alphabet. This lesson will teach you how Japanese is pronounced. Let's get started!

### A The Japanese Writing Systems

There are three Japanese writing systems:

- hiragana (pronounced "hear-uh-gah-nah")
- katakana (pronounced "kah-tah-kah-nah")
- kanji (pronounced "kahn-jee")

Kanji are Chinese characters, and each one has a specific meaning. Many kanji have multiple meanings and can be read different ways. Hiragana and katakana are phonetic characters derived from the more complicated kanji. They each represent a sound and do not have meaning by themselves.

The three writing systems are used together to write Japanese. Hiragana and kanji are used together to form all Japanese words. Katakana is mostly used to represent words of foreign origin or any word that was not originally Japanese. In daily life the combination of these three systems, plus roman letters called "ro-maji", are used in all types of media.

## A Japanese Pronunciation

Anyone can sound great in Japanese. Although English is made up of over a thousand possible sounds, Japanese has many less. A little over a hundred sounds are all you need to speak Japanese.

For this reason, it is much easier for English-speaking people to learn natural Japanese pronunciation than it is for Japanese speakers to learn natural English pronunciation. With just a few exceptions, Japanese sounds are based on the following five vowel sounds:

### □ Normal vowels

These sounds are short and simple, with no glide or lengthening.

Roman Letter	Sounds Like	Example
a	ah as in father	akai (red)
i	ee as in see	inochi (life)
u	oo as in zoo	uma (horse)
e	eh as in men	ebi (shrimp)
o	oh as in boat	otoko (man)

Now let's look at some of the sounds that make up the Japanese language. Use the same pronunciation as above for the sound sets listed below.

ka, ki, ku, ke, ko ga, gi, gu, ge, go	sa, shi, su, se, so na, ni, nu, ne, no	pa, pi, pu, pe, po ba, bi, bu, be, bo
------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------

The following phonetic sounds are based on the "normal vowel" sounds listed above. The only difference is how the sound starts.

Roman Letter	Sounds Like	Example
ka	kah	ka (mosquito)
shi	shee	shiru (to know)
tsu	tsoo	tsuru (crane bird)
ne	neh	neko (cat)
po	poh	tanpopo (dandelion)

## □ Double vowels

In Japanese it is common that sounds will be lengthened. For example, in some words you will see a sound such as KA followed by an A, or NE followed by E, etc., to lengthen the sound.

Some books will represent the lengthened sound with a straight line over the lengthened vowel. This method may help you verbally, but doesn't help you when learning how to read and write Japanese. In *Japanese from Zero!*, A, I, U, E, or O is added to the sound that is to be lengthened just as the actual hiragana symbols are added to the word when written in Japanese. Look at the possible long vowel sound combinations.

Roman Letters	Sound	Example
aa, a-	ah as in father	okaasan (mother)
ii, i-	ee as in see	ojiisan (grandfather)
uu, u-	oo as in zoo	zutsuu (headache)
ei, ee, e-	eh as in men	oneesan (older sister)
ou, oo, o-	oh as in boat	moufu (blanket)

Words that are written in katakana use a "–" as the "lengthener" instead of a repeating vowel. You'll learn more about katakana in *Japanese From Zero!* book 2.

### Example Words

kyoutsuu	common	otousan	father
satou	sugar	obaasan	grandmother
heiwa	peace	sensou	war
yasashii	kind	isogashii	busy

## □ Long versus short sounds

The meaning of a Japanese word can be changed by lengthening just one syllable.

Examples	ie	house
	<u>ii</u> e	no
	obasan	aunt
	<u>oba</u> asan	grandmother
	ojisan	uncle
	<u>o</u> jisan	grandfather

## □ Double consonants

Some Japanese words use double consonant sounds. Double consonants such as 'kk', 'pp', 'tt', and 'cch' must be stressed more than a single consonant to show the correct meaning of a word.

### Examples

roku	number six
<u>rokku</u>	rock (music)
uta	a song
<u>utta</u>	sold (past tense verb)
mata	again
<u>matta</u>	waited (past tense verb)

Pre-Lesson

**B**

Level ①

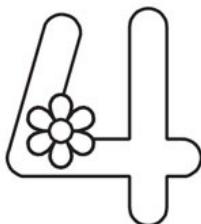
**Basic Counting**

0 to 9999

 1  
 2  
 3  
 4
**B The Basic Numbers****□ Single Numbers**

Basic counting in Japanese is easy! All you have to do is remember the following list of numbers, a few rules, and you're on the way.

the single numbers – 0-10		
rei, maru, zero ☆	れい、まる、ゼロ	0
ichi	いち	1
ni	に	2
san	さん	3
shi, yon ☆	し、よん	4
go	ご	5
roku	ろく	6
shichi, nana ☆	しち、なな	7
hachi	はち	8
ku, kyuu ☆	く、きゅう	9
juu	じゅう	10

**B Culture Clip: Why Two Versions?**

The numbers with a ☆ have more than one version. Sometimes one version must be used instead of the other, but many times the version used is a personal preference.

There are also some cultural reasons for the different versions. The number four in Japanese is *yon*, or *shi*. *Shi* also means death. The number nine in Japanese is *kyuu* or *ku*. *Ku* also means suffering.



For these reasons, four and nine are considered to be unlucky in Japan. Many apartment buildings in Japan do not have apartments numbered four or nine. The different versions are used extensively in Japanese, so make sure to remember them.

## B The Counting Units

### □ The teens

To form numbers from 11 to 19, start with *juu* (10) and place the additional number you need directly after it. It is much like counting with roman numerals.

the teens – 11-19		
juu ichi	じゅういち	11
juu ni	じゅうに	12
juu san	じゅうさん	13
juu yon, juu shi ☆	じゅうよん、じゅうし	14
juu go	じゅうご	15
juu roku	じゅうろく	16
juu nana, juu shichi ☆	じゅうなな、じゅうしち	17
juu hachi	じゅうはち	18
juu kyuu, juu ku ☆	じゅうきゅう、じゅうく	19

### □ The tens

The tens are formed by combining the single numbers with *juu*. For example, 20 is two tens (*ni juu*), and 50 is five tens (*go juu*). The concept is simple. Look at this chart:

the tens – 10-90			
juu		じゅう	10
ni juu		にじゅう	20
san juu		さんじゅう	30
yon juu	never “shi juu”	よんじゅう	40
go juu		ごじゅう	50
roku juu		ろくじゅう	60
nana juu	never “shichi juu”	ななじゅう	70
hachi juu		はちじゅう	80
kyuu juu	never “ku juu”	きゅうじゅう	90

### □ Combining tens and singles

To make a number like 31, just string the numbers 30 and 1 together.

#### Examples

- |                                     |   |                     |   |                       |
|-------------------------------------|---|---------------------|---|-----------------------|
| 31 is <i>san juu</i> (three tens)   | + | <i>ichi</i> (one)   | = | <i>san juu ichi</i>   |
| 52 is <i>go juu</i> (five tens)     | + | <i>ni</i> (two)     | = | <i>go juu ni</i>      |
| 87 is <i>hachi juu</i> (eight tens) | + | <i>nana</i> (seven) | = | <i>hachi juu nana</i> |

ni juu ichi	にじゅういち	21
ni juu ni	にじゅうに	22
ni juu san	にじゅうさん	23
ni juu yon / shi	にじゅうよん / し	24
ni juu go	にじゅうご	25
ni juu roku	にじゅうろく	26
ni juu nana / shichi	にじゅうなな / しち	27
ni juu hachi	にじゅうはち	28
ni juu ku / kyuu	にじゅうく / きゅう	29

## □ The hundreds and thousands

With *hyaku* (hundreds) and *sen* (thousands), the pattern is basically the same, but there are some variations. The variations are marked with ☆.

the hundreds – 100-900			
hyaku		ひゃく	100
ni hyaku		にひゃく	200
san byaku ☆	never “san hyaku”	さんびゃく	300
yon hyaku	never “shi hyaku”	よんひゃく	400
go hyaku		ごひゃく	500
roppyaku ☆	never “roku hyaku”	ろっぴゃく	600
nana hyaku	never “shichi hyaku”	ななひゃく	700
happyaku ☆	never “hachi hyaku”	はっぴゃく	800
kyuu hyaku	never “ku hyaku”	きゅうひゃく	900

the thousands – 1000-9000			
sen, issen		せん、いっせん	1,000
ni sen		にせん	2,000
san zen ☆	never “san sen”	さんぜん	3,000
yon sen	never “shi sen”	よんせん	4,000
go sen		ごせん	5,000
roku sen		ろくせん	6,000
nana sen	never “shichi sen”	ななせん	7,000
hassen ☆	never “hachi sen”	はっせん	8,000
kyuu sen	never “ku sen”	きゅうせん	9,000

## □ Putting all the numbers together

Now that you know the hundreds and thousands you can simply string the numbers together to say numbers up to 9,999. The first few examples below will use repeating numbers to help you get used to putting the numbers together.

### Examples

- |          |                                   |
|----------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. 222   | ni hyaku ni juu ni                |
| 2. 555   | go hyaku go juu go                |
| 3. 888   | happyaku hachi juu hachi          |
| 4. 4,444 | yon sen yon hyaku yon juu yon     |
| 5. 7,777 | nana sen nana hyaku nana juu nana |

Now let's mix up the numbers. Make sure you understand the numbers with exceptions to the patterns.

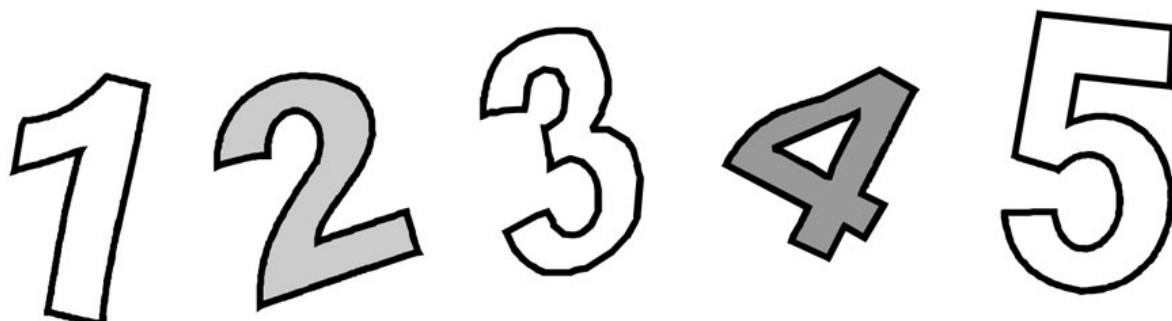
### Examples

- |          |                              |
|----------|------------------------------|
| 1. 639   | roppyaku san juu kyuu        |
| 2. 360   | sanbyaku roku juu            |
| 3. 2,512 | ni sen go hyaku juu ni       |
| 4. 8,096 | hassen kyuu juu roku         |
| 5. 9,853 | kyuu sen happyaku go juu san |

## B For practice れんしゅうのため

Practice saying your phone, cell phone, fax numbers, etc., in Japanese. Learn them forwards and backwards.

When you are riding in your car, practice reading the numbers on other cars' license plates.



**B Lesson Activities****□ Number conversion**

Write out the following numbers in Japanese.

- |          |       |           |       |
|----------|-------|-----------|-------|
| 1) 34    | _____ | 2) 59     | _____ |
| 3) 29    | _____ | 4) 78     | _____ |
| 5) 120   | _____ | 6) 392    | _____ |
| 7) 57    | _____ | 8) 3,004  | _____ |
| 9) 1,203 | _____ | 10) 789   | _____ |
| 11) 99   | _____ | 12) 4,675 | _____ |
| 13) 932  | _____ | 14) 8,773 | _____ |

**□ Everyday Numbers**

Follow the instructions for each task.

1. Write your home phone number in Japanese.

---

2. Write your cellular number, or work phone number in Japanese.

---

3. Write your license plate number in Japanese. (Write any letters in ro-maji)

---



## First Meeting

Self introduction and basic greetings



### **C** About This Lesson このレッスンについて

If there is one thing you need to be good at, it is introducing yourself. You should practice this as often as you can. You only get one first impression.

The good news is that not being a Japanese speaker gives you an advantage. If you mess up your initial introduction, you will most likely be forgiven. You are not Japanese, and everyone will understand that you are still learning.

### **C** Culture clip: Bowing



In the next conversation you will be able to practice a first-meeting conversation, but what you cannot see in the text is the bow that each person does when they say, "Hajimemashite." Bowing is as important to the Japanese as shaking hands is to others.

Many of us have always heard that the deeper you bow, the more respect you bestow upon the person to whom you are bowing. This is true, though the majority of students learning Japanese will not find themselves in a situation that warrants a deep bow. When first meeting someone, a 30-degree bow held for about two seconds is standard. But keep in mind that, as a foreigner to Japan, the Japanese do not expect you to know Japanese customs, and if you bow incorrectly it will not be considered rude.

The most common everyday bow is an informal 15-degree bow held for one or two seconds. You will be bowed to no matter where you go. The next time you see a Japanese person talking on the phone, you might even see them bowing to the person on the other end of the conversation! It is not necessary to return bows to waiters or staff in department stores. A nod of the head will suffice.



Hands are normally kept near the body when bowing. Men tend to have their hands at their sides while, women will usually place them together on their thighs with the fingertips overlapping or touching.

## C Conversation かいわ

### □ Meeting someone for the first time

Let's look at the phrases that will come up when you first meet someone.

#### 1. Hajimemashite

**Nice to meet you. / How do you do?**

This phrase is only used when first meeting someone. When pronouncing "Hajimemashite" make sure that the "i" in "mashite" is silent to sound similar to "mashte".

#### 2. (name) to moushimasu.

I am (name).

Although there are other ways to say your name, this is an excellent way to introduce yourself. It is very polite and humble at the same time. It is the equivalent to saying "I am called \_\_\_\_\_".

#### 3. Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.

**Best regards. / I look forward to working with you.**

It's amazing how many different meanings there are for this phrase. This phrase is multi-purpose and its meaning varies depending on the situation. When used as it is in Conversation 1, it means something to the effect of, "Let's be nice to each other."

Although this phrase is very common when speaking Japanese, there is not an English equivalent that properly sums up its many meanings. Now let's see the phrases we have learned in action.

#### Conversation 1: First meeting

This conversation is between people meeting for the first time. Mr. Smith (Sumisu) is American and Mr. Mori is Japanese.

**Mr. Smith:** Hajimemashite. Sumisu to moushimasu.

**Mr. Mori:** Hajimemashite. Mori to moushimasu. Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.

**Mr. Smith:** Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.

**Mr. Smith:** Nice to meet you. I am Smith (My name is Smith).

**Mr. Mori:** Nice to meet you. I am Mori (My name is Mori). Best regards.

**Mr. Smith:** Best regards.

## □ Asking someone their age

Early on in your quest to learn Japanese, your conversations will be limited to what you can reliably understand and say in Japanese. Although the topic of "age" is not normally discussed in first time situations (and might be especially awkward in a business meeting!), it isn't a strange topic to discuss when meeting new people outside of business.

### 1. Nansai desu ka.

How old are you?

### 2. (years) sai desu.

I am (years) years old.

If needed, please review the numbers you learned in the prior lesson. The word “sai” literally means “years old.” It must always come after the number representing your age.

#### Examples

3 years old

san sai

15 years old

juu go sai

100 years old

hyaku sai

### Conversation 2: How old are you?

**Mr. Smith:** Nansai desu ka.

**Ms. Hayashi:** Ni juu go sai desu.

**Mr. Smith:** How old are you?

**Ms. Hayashi:** I am 25 years old.

## □ Learning to say your age

As previously stated, to say your age, just add *sai* after the number of years. Some ages are said differently than you might think. Use the chart below to learn the correct way.

#### years old - とし

1 year old	issai	never “ichi sai”
2 years old	ni sai	
3 years old	san sai	
4 years old	yon sai	never “shi sai”
5 years old	go sai	
6 years old	roku sai	
7 years old	nana sai	never “shichi sai”
8 years old	hassai	never “hachi sai”

9 years old	kyuu sai	never “kusai” ( <i>kusai</i> means smelly!)
10 years old	jussai	never “juu sai”
11 years old	juu issai	never “juu ichi sai”
12 years old	juu ni sai	
13 years old	juu san sai	
14 years old	juu yon sai	never “juu shi sai”
15 years old	juu go sai	
16 years old	juu roku sai	
17 years old	juu nana sai	never “juu shichi sai”
18 years old	juu hassai	never “juu hachi sai”
19 years old	juu kyuu sai	
20 years old	hatachi	never “ni juu sai”
21 years old	ni juu issai	never “ni juu ichi sai”
22 years old	ni juu ni sai	
23 years old	ni juu san sai	
24 years old	ni juu yon sai	never “ni juu shi sai”
25 years old	ni juu go sai	
26 years old	ni juu roku sai	
27 years old	ni juu nana sai	never “ni juu shichi sai”
28 years old	ni juu hassai	never “ni juu hachi sai”
29 years old	ni juu kyuu sai	never “ni juu ku sai”
30 years old	san jussai	never “san juu sai”
40 years old	yon jussai	never “shi juu sai” or “yon juu sai”
50 years old	go jussai	never “go juu sai”
100 years old	hyaku sai	sometimes said as “hyakkusai”

**Note:** The first ten numbers set the pattern for all the numbers that follow.

## □ How old do I look?

In your beginning stages of learning Japanese, the following conversation will be a really fun way to break the ice with your new Japanese friends. It is especially fun since Westerners and Japanese have different perceptions about how old someone looks.

### 1. Nansai ni miemasu ka.

**How old do I look?**

This is probably the most common response to “Nansai desu ka.” Keep in mind that honesty can be brutal in any language, so be kind with your answer! This phrase is great because it gives you and your new friend an opportunity for fun.

### 2. (years) sai ni miemasu.

You look (years) years old.

**Conversation 3 How old do I look?**

**Mr. Smith:** Nansai desu ka.  
**Ms. Hayashi:** Nansai ni miemasu ka.  
**Mr. Smith:** Hatachi ni miemasu.

**Mr. Smith:** How old are you?  
**Ms. Hayashi:** How old do I look?  
**Mr. Smith:** You look 20 years old.

**C****Speaking Naturally しぜんにはなすこと**

As with any language, there is "grammatically correct" and "culturally correct". In this section you will learn how to sound more natural when speaking Japanese. In some cases you might even learn how to break a rule you just learned, and in some cases you might learn what is more commonly used.

**□ My name is...**

Many new students of Japanese learn to say "Watashi no namae wa \_\_\_\_\_ desu", which means, "My name is \_\_\_\_\_. " However, although grammatically correct, this way of introducing yourself is not common between Japanese people.

**Conversation 4: My name is... (grammatically correct)**

**Ms. Hayashi:** (O)namae wa nan desu ka.  
**Mr. Smith:** Watashi no namae wa Sumisu desu.

**Ms. Hayashi:** What is your name?  
**Mr. Smith:** My name is Smith.

**Conversation 5: My name is... (the natural way)**

**Ms. Hayashi:** (O)namae wa nan desu ka.  
**Mr. Smith:** Sumisu to moushimasu.

**Ms. Hayashi:** What is your name?  
**Mr. Smith:** I am Smith (My name is Smith).

**C Lesson Activities****□ Japanese numbers**

Translate the following Japanese into English.

1. nana juu go sai \_\_\_\_\_ 6. juu roku sai \_\_\_\_\_

2. yon juu hassai \_\_\_\_\_ 7. go juu issai \_\_\_\_\_

3. hachi juu ni sai \_\_\_\_\_ 8. hatachi \_\_\_\_\_

4. hyaku nana sai \_\_\_\_\_ 9. happyaku sai \_\_\_\_\_

5. san juu yon sai \_\_\_\_\_ 10. issai \_\_\_\_\_

**□ Question and answer 1**

Answer the following question in Japanese.

1. Nansai desu ka.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. (O)namae wa nan desu ka.

\_\_\_\_\_

**Question and answer 2**

For each of the pictures below answer the question:

**Nansai ni miemasu ka.**

1.



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2.



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3.



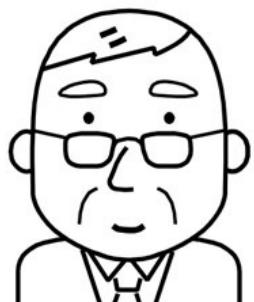
Answer: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4.



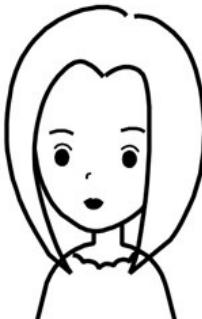
Answer: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5.



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

6.



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Pre-Lesson

**D**

Level ①

## Coming and Going

Basic greetings and farewells

**D**

### About This Lesson このレッスンについて

In Japan, there are certain phrases used for coming and going. These phrases change depending on whether the location is your own home, someone else's home, or a place of business.

**D**

### New Phrases あたらしいことは

#### □ Daily Greetings

Try to use the new phrases below every day with your friends and family.

##### 1. Ohayou gozaimasu. / Ohayou.

**Good morning.**

The short version of *ohayou gozaimasu* is *ohayou* and is normally only used with friends, family and people you have a casual relationship with.

##### 2. Konnichiwa.

**Good afternoon.**

The sound of the double consonant ‘nn’ in *konnichiwa* is held longer than just one “n”.

##### 3. Konbanwa.

**Good evening.**

This is only used when you first meet with someone in the evening. It cannot be used at the end of an evening.

##### 4. Oyasuminasai. / Oyasumi.

**Good night.**

The short version, *oyasumi*, should only be used with friends, family and people you have a casual relationship with.

##### 5. Arigatou gozaimasu. / Arigatou.

**Thank you.**

*Arigatou* is very common as a short way to say “Thank you”. In real life, you will rarely hear the often-taught version *Doumo arigatou gozaimasu*.

## □ Leaving and returning home

The following phrases are said everyday by millions of Japanese people as they leave and arrive home:

### 1. **itte kimasu.**

**I will go and come back. / I'll be back.**

This phrase is said when you leave your home. It can also be said when you are leaving any place to which you plan to return.

### 2. **itterasshai.**

**Have a good day. / Take care. / See you.**

This is the response to *itte kimasu*. This phrase is said to someone who is leaving and will be back. *itterasshai* is normally only used in situations when the person leaving will return in a relatively short time.

### 3. **Tadaima.**

**I'm home. / I'm back.**

This phrase is commonly used when arriving home. It can also be used when returning to a place you recently left.

### 4. **Okaerinasai.**

**Welcome back home.**

This is the response to *tadaima*. It can also be said to someone who has just returned to a place they have been before.

#### Conversation 1: Leaving home

The following conversation is between Jiro and his mother as Jiro leaves to go to school.

**Jiro:** itte kimasu!

**Jiro's mother:** itterasshai!

#### Conversation 2: Returning home

The following conversation is between Jiro and his mother as Jiro arrives back home from school.

**Jiro:** Tadaima!

**Jiro's mother:** Okaerinasai!

## D Speaking Naturally しぜんにはなすこと

### □ The silent "U" sound

Many phrases taught in this lesson end with "masu".

#### Examples

1. Ohayou gozaimasu.
2. itte kimasu.
3. Arigatou gozaimasu.

In everyday spoken Japanese, the final "u" in words containing "masu" is silent and the word is pronounced as "mas". Practice your words and phrases with this pronunciation and you will sound more natural.

## D Lesson Activities

### □ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into English.

1.

**Mari:** itte kimasu.  
**Mari's mother:** itterashai.

Mari:

Mari's mother:

2.

**Kenji:** Tadaima.  
**Kenji's father:** Okaerinasai.

Kenji:

Kenji's father:

## Vocabulary Groups

During your studies you will soon realize that grammar points aren't so easily forgotten. But you need more than grammar to speak effectively – you need vocabulary too!

Throughout this book we will introduce groups of words that are important to everyday Japanese speaking. You don't have to try to memorize them all at once. Just familiarize yourself with each group since they will be showing up in subsequent lessons.

### □ Explanation of Progressive, Kana and Kanji

When new words are introduced, multiple Japanese versions of each word will be introduced. This will make it easier to review once you know how to read more Japanese.

**Progressive** – As you learn hiragana throughout each lesson, the progressive version will slowly replace the English alphabet with hiragana that you have learned.

**Kana** – This version will be either Hiragana or Katakana characters depending on how the word is normally written in Japanese. Hiragana and Katakana are collectively referred to as Kana.

**Kanji** – When a word is normally written in Kanji, it will be displayed here. If there is no Kanji for that word, then the Kana version will be repeated.

## A the body

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
kuchi	くち	口	mouth
me	め	目	eye
mimi	みみ	耳	ear
hana	はな	鼻	nose
kao	かお	顔	face
te	て	手	hand
ashi	あし	足	foot; leg
yubi	ゆび	指	finger
atama	あたま	頭	head
ha	は	歯	tooth, teeth

**B bed and bath**

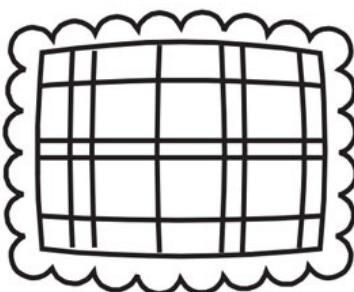
Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
makura	まくら	枕	pillow
beddo	ベッド	ベッド	bed
futon	ふとん	布団	futon
moufu	もうふ	毛布	blanket
taoru	タオル	タオル	towel
ofuro	おふろ	お風呂	bath
sekken	せっけん	石けん	soap
haburashi	ハブラシ	歯ブラシ	toothbrush
kagami	かがみ	鏡	mirror
mado	まど	窓	window



ゆび



せっけん



まくら



タオル

Lesson

**1**

Level ①

## Creating Simple Sentences

What is it?

**1**

### About This Lesson このレッスンについて

#### Before The Lesson

1. Review vocabulary groups A and B.
2. Make sure you understand the basics of Japanese pronunciation from Pre-Lesson A.

#### Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to ask and answer simple questions
2. Learn the question particle *ka*

#### From The Teachers

1. Remember the phrase *nan desu ka* (What is it?) and understand how *desu* is used.

**1**

### New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
nani	なに	何	What?
hai	はい	はい	yes
iie *	いいえ	いいえ	no
inu	いぬ	犬	dog
neko	ねこ	猫	cat
~san (after name)	さん	さん	Mr., Ms., Mrs., Miss
Tanaka	たなか	田中	(a common last name)
Kobayashi	こばやし	小林	(a common last name)

\* NOTE: In this book, *iie* and other Japanese words that start with "i" will be typed in lowercase to avoid confusion with lowercase "L".

## 1 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

Each lesson will have several new phrases. At this point, don't worry about the grammar; simply memorizing the phrases will be more beneficial at this point.

- |                                          |                             |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Do you understand?                    | Wakarimasu ka.              |
| 2. Yes, I understand.                    | Hai, wakarimasu.            |
| 3. No, I don't understand.               | iie, wakarimasen.           |
| 4. I don't understand. / I don't know. * | Wakarimasen.                |
| 5. Please say it once again.             | Mou ichido itte kudasai.    |
| 6. Please speak more slowly.             | Motto yukkuri itte kudasai. |

\* NOTE: Although *wakarimasen* means “I don’t understand,” it is frequently used to mean “I don’t know.”

## 1 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ Plurals

The Japanese language does not have plurals like English does. For example, *mimi* means “ear” or “ears,” depending on the context of the sentence. Later you will learn that some words have plural forms, but for now remember that most words can be either plural or singular without any modification.

### □ Using *desu* to make a simple statement

*Desu* (usually pronounced “des”), depending on the context, can mean: “it is,” “this is,” “they are,” “these are,” “I am,” “you are,” “he is,” “she is” and “we are.” It is always placed at the end of a sentence. Look at these examples to see how *desu* is used:

[word] + desu

#### Example Sentences

- |                                 |                             |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <u>It is</u> a pillow.       | Makura <u>desu</u> .        |
| 2. <u>I am</u> Tanaka.          | Tanaka <u>desu</u> .        |
| 3. <u>She is</u> Ms. Kobayashi. | Kobayashi san <u>desu</u> . |
| 4. <u>It is</u> soap.           | Sekken <u>desu</u> .        |

## □ Making a question using *ka*

*Ka* is like the English question mark. To change a statement in Japanese to a question, you just add *ka* at the end.

[word] + desu ka

### Example Sentences

1. Is it a pillow?
2. Are you Tanaka?
3. Is she Ms. Kobayashi?
4. Is it soap?

Makura desu ka.  
Tanaka san desu ka.  
Kobayashi san desu ka.  
Sekken desu ka.

## □ The question word *nani*

The question word *nani* or *nan* means “what.” The two versions are used differently.

*Nani* can stand alone to simply mean “What?” *Nan* cannot be used alone. It is always used with other words such as *desu*, as in the sentence “Nan desu ka” (“What is it?”).

### Example Sentences

1. Nan desu ka.
2. Nansai desu ka.
3. Nani iro desu ka. \*
4. Nani ga suki desu ka. \*

What is it?  
How old are you?  
What color is it?  
What do you like?

\* NOTE: The grammar used in the example sentences 3 and 4 above using *nani* will be taught in later lessons. In the mean time, simply remember that you will see both NAN and NANI to mean "what".

1

## Culture Clip: Using *san* for Mr., Mrs., etc.

It is a custom in Japan to add *san* to the end of someone's name. *San* means “Mr.,” “Ms.,” “Mrs.,” and “Miss,” and can be used on first or last names. It is considered rude not to use *san*, especially when talking to or about someone you are not close to, or to someone who is older or above you in status. You should never use *san* when referring to yourself or someone in your own family.

**1 Q&A しつもんと こたえ****1. What is it?**

It is a pillow.  
It is soap.  
I don't know.

**Nan desu ka.**

Makura desu.  
Sekken desu.  
Wakarimasen.

**2. Is it (this) a mirror?**

Yes, it is a mirror.  
No, it is a window.

**Kagami desu ka.**

Hai, kagami desu.  
iie, mado desu.

**3. Is (this) a bed?**

No, it is a futon.  
Yes, it is a bed.

**Beddo desu ka.**

iie, futon desu.  
Hai, beddo desu.

**4. Is he Mr. Tanaka?**

Yes, he is Mr. Tanaka.  
No, he is Mr. Kobayashi.

**Tanaka san desu ka.**

Hai, Tanaka san desu.  
iie, Kobayashi san desu.

**5. Is it a head?**

No, it is a face.  
Yes, it is a head.  
I don't know.

**Atama desu ka.**

iie, kao desu.  
Hai, atama desu.  
Wakarimasen.

**6. Do you understand?**

No, I don't understand.  
Yes, I understand.  
No.

**Wakarimasu ka.**

iie, wakarimasen.  
Hai, wakarimasu.  
iie.

**7. What is it?**

It is a hand.  
It is a foot.  
It is a finger.  
It is a toothbrush.

**Nan desu ka.**

Te desu.  
Ashi desu.  
Yubi desu.  
Haburashi desu.

**8. Is she Ms. Kobayashi?**

I don't know.  
No, she is Ms. Tanaka.  
Yes, she is Ms. Kobayashi.

**Kobayashi san desu ka.**

Wakarimasen.  
iie, Tanaka san desu.  
Hai, Kobayashi san desu.

## Hiragana あいうえお

### あ The goal ゴール

When you complete *Japanese From Zero!* you will be able to read and write all of the symbols shown below. This chart is read in traditional Japanese-style, from right-to-left and top-to-bottom.

Read right-to-left and top-to-bottom

わ	ら	や	ま	ぱ	ば	は	な	だ	た	ざ	さ	が	か	あ
wa	ra	ya	ma	pa	ba	ha	na	da	ta	za	sa	ga	ka	a
り	ひ	み	ひ	び	ひ	に	ぢ	ち	じ	し	ぎ	き	い	i
ri	hi	mi	bi	hi	ni	ji	chi	ji	shi	gi	ki			
を	る	ゆ	む	ふ	ぶ	ふ	ぬ	づ	つ	ず	す	ぐ	く	う
wo	ru	yu	mu	pu	bu	fu	nu	zu	tsu	zu	su	gu	ku	u
れ	べ	め	べ	べ	へ	ね	で	て	ぜ	せ	げ	け	え	e
re	be	me	be	be	he	ne	de	te	ze	se	ge	ke	e	
ん	ろ	よ	も	ほ	ぼ	ほ	の	ど	と	ぞ	そ	ご	こ	お
n	ro	yo	mo	po	bo	ho	no	do	to	zo	so	go	ko	o



### あ How this book works

*Japanese From Zero!* uses *Japanese From Zero's* PROGRESSIVE SYSTEM of teaching hiragana. As you learn new hiragana, we will immediately replace the roman letters (ro-maji) with the hiragana you have just learned. For example, after you learn あ (which sounds like "ah") we will mix it into the example words.

English	Before this lesson	After this lesson	Complete hiragana
you	anata	あ nata	あなた
dog	inu	い nu	いぬ
house	ie	いえ	いえ
mother	okaasan	お ka あ san	おかあさん

## あ Some History れきし

Hiragana was created by a Buddhist monk over 1200 years ago (AD 774-835). At that time it was believed that women were not allowed to learn the very intricate kanji. After hiragana was introduced to women, they were able to express themselves in the written form. It is due to hiragana that women authored many of the first published works in Japan.

### Hiragana character samples

あかさたなはまやらわん

Katakana was created by using portions of kanji, while the more rounded hiragana was created by simplifying kanji. Children in Japan learn hiragana first, then katakana, and finally kanji. Hiragana, with only 47 unique characters, can represent the entire Japanese language.

### Katakana character samples

アカサタナハマヤラワン

Kanji, on the other hand, consists of over 10,000 characters. In 1981 the Japanese Ministry of Education announced 1,945 commonly used kanji called the *Jyou Kanji*. By the 6th grade, the average Japanese student knows half of the *Jyou Kanji*. Since this time more Kanji have been deemed necessary to learn and have been added to the *Jyou Kanji* list.

### Kanji character samples

安加左太奈波末也良和毛

## あ Writing Basics かくときの きほん

### □ What is a stroke?

A stroke begins when the pen (or any other writing device) comes in contact with the paper. The stroke ends when the pen separates from the paper.

### □ Why use brushes to write?

Traditionally, Japanese was written with brushes. This book – and almost any book that teaches Japanese writing – uses the brush-written style for the Japanese characters. The brush-written style best represents how the characters should be written.

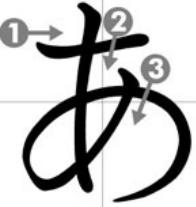
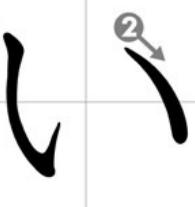
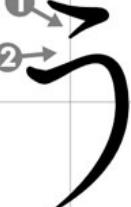
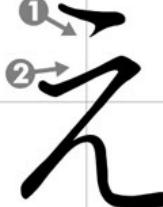
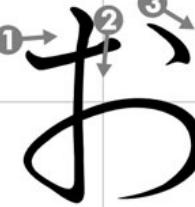
### □ Different types of brush strokes

There are three types of strokes. For ease of understanding we have named them *fade out*, *dead stop* and *bounce fade*. Whether writing with a brush, pen, or pencil, make sure that you pay attention to the stroke type. This will ensure that your writing is neat and proper.



## あ New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

The first five hiragana to learn are listed below. Notice the different stroke types. Make sure you learn the correct stroke order and stroke type.

A	I	U	E	O
				

as in father

as in see

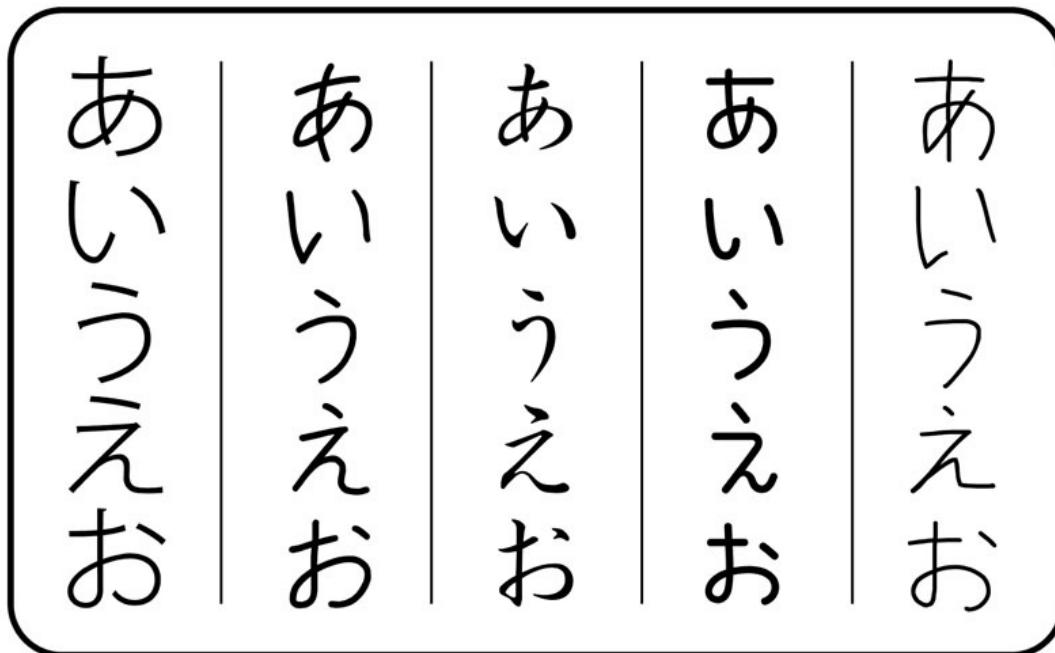
as in zoo

as in men

as in boat

## あ Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.



### □ The importance of the various styles

It is important to always study the different styles of each character in the Various Styles section of the lessons to see what is allowed when writing. Remember that there are small differences between how the characters will look when writing with a brush and writing with a pen or pencil.

## あ Writing Points かくポイント

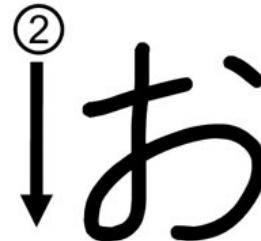
### □ The difference between あ (a) and お (o)

Be careful not to mix up あ and お. The second stroke of あ is curved while the second stroke for お is straight until the loop.

more curved  
than お and  
not connected  
to the loop.

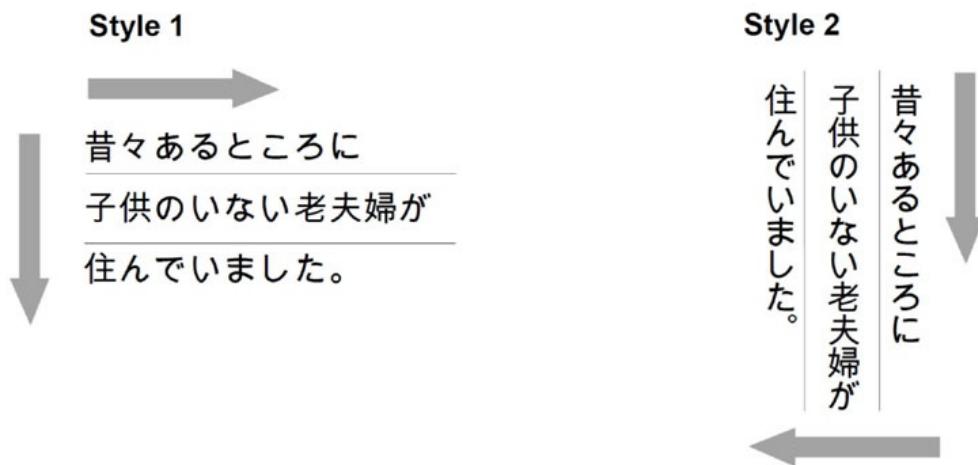


straighter  
than あ and  
connected to  
the loop.



## □ Writing left-to-right and top-to-bottom

Before World War II, Japanese publications were written with each line going from top to bottom as shown in style 2 below. In modern Japan, both styles are common. Many times the style used is based solely on design choice, and in some cases (such as writing an e-mail) only style 1 is possible. Many Japanese writing books for children will use style 2. Even though *Japanese From Zero!* contains only style 1, both styles are acceptable.



## あ Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

a	あ	あ						
i	い	い						
u	う	う						
e	え	え						
o	お	お						

**あ****Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう**

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. okaasan (mother)

2. ie (house)

3. otousan (father)

4. akai (red)

5. imouto (younger sister)

6. kau (to buy)

7. usagi (rabbit)

8. enpitsu (pencil)

9. oneesan (older sister)

10. omoshiroi (interesting)

11. isu (chair)

12. okiru (to wake up)

**あ****Words You Can Write かける ことば**

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

え

(a painting)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--

いい

(good)

--	--	--	--	--	--

おい

(nephew)

--	--	--	--	--

あい  
(love)


えい  
(a ray fish)


いいえ  
(no)


おおい  
(many)


あう  
(to meet)


うえ  
(up)


いう  
(to say)


いえ  
(house)


あお  
(blue)


あ

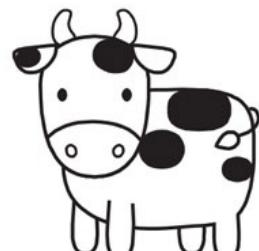
Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうのことば



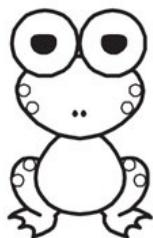
あ kachan  
baby



い nu  
dog



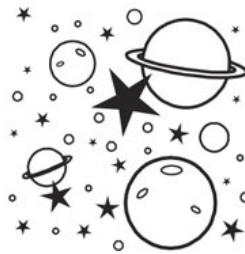
う shi  
cow



ka え ru  
frog



お koru  
to get mad



う chu う  
space

### あ Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

お	・	・ a
う	・	・ o
え	・	・ u
い	・	・ e
あ	・	・ i

## 1 Lesson Activities

### □ Question and answer

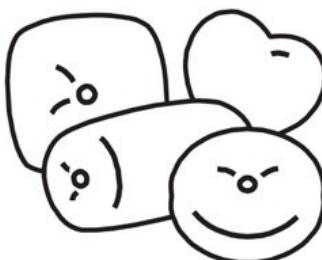
Answer the following questions by looking at the pictures. You can check your answers in the answer key for this lesson.

1. Nan desu ka?



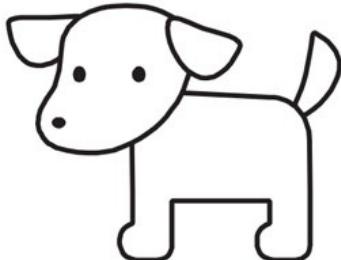
Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

2. Taoru desu ka?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

3. Nan desu ka?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

4. Hana desu ka?



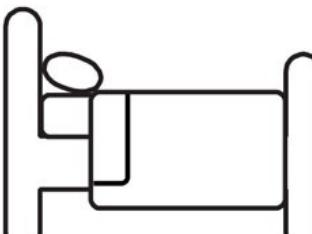
Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

5. Tanaka san desu ka?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

6. Nan desu ka?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

**□ Japanese translation**

Translate the following conversation into English.

1.

**Tanaka san:** Nan desu ka. Mo う fu desu ka.

**Kobayashi san:** Mo う い chido い tte kudasa い.

**Tanaka san:** Mo う fu desu ka.

**Kobayashi san:** いいえ, taoru desu.

Tanaka san:

Kobayashi san:

Tanaka san:

Kobayashi san:

**□ English translation**

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

1.

**Kouichi:** Are you Masumi?

**Yasuko:** No, I am Yasuko. Are you Yuusuke?

**Kouichi:** No, I am Kouichi.

Kouichi:

Masumi:

Kouichi:

**□ What would you say?**

What would you say in the following situations? Write the answer in Japanese.

1. When you want someone to repeat what they said:

- 
2. When you meet someone for the first time:
-

3. When you want someone to guess your age:

---

4. When you ask someone if he is Mr. Nakamura:

---

5. When you ask someone to speak slower:

---

## 1 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you know what they mean, congratulations! You're already learning Japanese! If you don't know what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

- |                      |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Nan desu ka.      | 5. Makura desu ka. |
| 2. Wakarimasu ka.    | 6. いいえ、ねこ desu.    |
| 3. Ha い, wakarimasu. | 7. Wakarimasen.    |
| 4. い nu desu ka.     | 8. Hajimemashite.  |

## 1 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

Nan desu ka.  
What is it?

Lesson

**2**

Level ①

**Working with a Topic**

Which one?

**2 About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read あいうえお.
2. Understand how to use *desu* and the particle *ka*.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn how to work with a topic in simple sentences.
2. Learn how to use the topic marker *wa*.

**From The Teachers**

1. Remember the phrases “Dore desu ka” and “Docchi desu ka”
2. Memorize the ***ko so a do*** pattern. It’ll come in handy later.

**2 New Words あたらしいことは**

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
dore	どれ	どれ	which one (three or more)
kore	これ	これ	this one
sore	それ	それ	that one
あ re	あれ	あれ	that one over there
docchi	どっち	どっち	which one (two items)
kocchi	こっち	こっち	this one
socchi	そっち	そっち	that one
あ cchi	あっち	あっち	that one over there
retasu	レタス	レタス	lettuce
banana	バナナ	バナナ	banana
yasa i	やさい	野菜	vegetable
furu-tsu	フルーツ	フルーツ	fruit

kudamono	くだもの	果物	fruit
sushi	すし	寿司	sushi
pen	ペン	ペン	pen
kuruma	くるま	車	car
konpyu-ta-	コンピューター	コンピューター	computer
hon	ほん	本	book
zasshi	ざっし	雑誌	magazine

## 2 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

At this point, don't worry about the grammar of the New Phrases; simply memorizing the phrases will be more beneficial at this point.

- |                            |                               |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Can you speak Japanese? | Nihongo ga hanasemasu ka.     |
| 2. Can you speak English?  | えいご ga hanasemasu ka.         |
| 3. A little.               | Sukoshi.                      |
| 4. Not at all.             | Zenzen.                       |
| 5. I am studying Japanese. | Nihongo o benkyou shiteimasu. |

## 2 Culture Clip: Sushi and Sashimi

Many foreigners to Japan don't know the difference between sushi and sashimi. Sushi is raw or cooked fish, eggs, or vegetables on rice. It is placed on top of a fist-full of rice, and normally between the fish and rice there is some *wasabi*. *Wasabi* is a Japanese horseradish. It is very pungent. Sashimi is just sliced raw fish. (Try it – you might like it!)

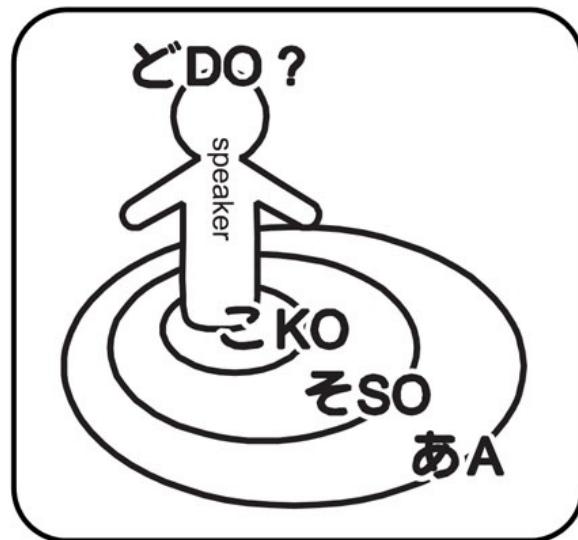


## 2 Cool Tools クール・ツール

In Japanese, there is a pattern of words that comes up many times. It is the ***ko so a do*** pattern. In this lesson there are two ***ko so a do*** patterns: kore, sore, are, dore, and kocchi, socchi, acchi, docchi. Notice that each word starts with *ko~*, *so~*, *a~* or *do~*. The following chart shows the distance relation of these words to the speaker.

Since the four words in a *ko-so-a-do* group are similar in sound, they are easy to mix up. The diagram on the right will help you remember the relation of each word in the group to the speaker. Remember this diagram, because there are more *ko-so-a-do* groups coming up.

- ko** – Close enough to touch
- so** – Sort of close, but not enough to touch
- a** – In the distance. Definitely not close.
- do** – Question word.



## 2 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ The topic marker *wa*

The particle *wa* is used to mark the topic of the sentence. It can be thought to mean, “Speaking of (the) ~,” or “As for (the) ~,” but it does not have any meaning in English. Generally, everything that comes before *wa* is the topic or part of the topic. Everything after the *wa* describes or asks a question about the topic.

[topic] + *wa* + [question or description]

Sentence Structure ぶんけい		
Tomorrow	Monday	is
あshita <b>wa</b> getsuyoうbi desu.		Tomorrow is Monday.

topic marker

<p>Yukari                    Japanese                    is</p> <p>Yukari-san <b>wa</b> nihonjin desu.</p> <p>topic marker</p>	<p>Yukari is Japanese.</p>
<p>Bananas                    yellow                    are</p> <p>Banana <b>wa</b> kil'ro desu.</p> <p>topic marker</p>	<p>Bananas are yellow.</p>

## □ Using **wa** in a variety of sentences

Remember that **wa** is used to mark the topic of a sentence. Read the examples to see how **wa** can be applied to the words that you already know. Don't forget that the word before the **wa** is the topic, and everything after **wa** is asking a question about or describing the topic.

### Example Q&A

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. Kore <u>wa</u> nan desu ka.<br/>Sore <u>wa</u> kagami desu.</p> <p>2. Sore <u>wa</u> nan desu ka.<br/>Sore <u>wa</u> pen desu.<br/>あの <u>wa</u> banana desu.</p> <p>3. Kore <u>wa</u> yasa い desu ka.<br/>いいえ、sore <u>wa</u> furu-tsū desu.</p> <p>4. Banana <u>wa</u> nan desu ka.<br/>Banana <u>wa</u> furu-tsū desu.</p> <p>5. Retasu <u>wa</u> furu-tsū desu ka.<br/>いいえ、retasu <u>wa</u> yasa い desu.</p> | <p>What is this?<br/>That is a mirror.</p> <p>What is that?<br/>That is a pen.<br/>That over there is a banana.</p> <p>Is this a vegetable?<br/>No, that is a fruit.</p> <p>What is a banana?<br/>A banana is a fruit.</p> <p>Is lettuce a fruit?<br/>No, lettuce is a vegetable.</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## □ The question words *dore* and *docchi*

*Dore* and *docchi* both mean “which one?” *Dore* is used with groups of three or more. If there are only two items, *docchi* is used.

[topic] + wa **dore** desu ka  
 [topic] + wa **docchi** desu ka  
 Which one is the/a [topic]?

If there are three or more items, *dore* is used.

- |                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Kuruma wa dore desu ka.   | Which one is the car?     |
| 2. Furu–tsu wa dore desu ka. | Which one is a fruit?     |
| 3. Yasa \ wa dore desu ka.   | Which one is a vegetable? |

If there are only two items, *docchi* is used.

- |                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Kuruma wa docchi desu ka.   | Which one is the car?     |
| 2. Furu–tsu wa docchi desu ka. | Which one is a fruit?     |
| 3. Yasa \ wa docchi desu ka.   | Which one is a vegetable? |

## □ Following the same pattern when answering

Notice that the answers and the questions in the example Q&A below follow the same sentence pattern. When answering questions, remember that *90% of the answer is in the question*.

Also, when the question has ~cchi in it, the answer should not change to ~re. Try to keep response sentences in the same format as their question sentences.

### Example Q&A

Question:	Kuruma	wa	dore	desu	ka.	Which one is a car?
Answer:	Kuruma	wa	kore	desu.		The car is this one.

Question:	Banana	wa	nan	desu	ka.	What is a banana?
Answer:	Banana	wa	furu–tsu	desu.		A banana is a fruit.

Question:	Kagami	wa	dore	desu	ka.	Which one is a mirror?
Answer:	Kagami	wa	sore	desu.		That one is a mirror.

Question:	Mado	wa	docchi	desu	ka.	Which one is a window?
Answer:	Mado	wa	あ cchi	desu.		That one over there is a window.

## □ Using what you know to learn more

If you don't know a word, use the Japanese you know to ask someone what the word is. You can use the following sentence to ask what something is. For example, let's say that you don't know what エ npitsu means:

### Examples

1. エ npitsu wa nan desu ka?  
What is "enpitsu"?
2. エ npitsu wa pencil desu.  
Enpitsu is a pencil.

## 2 Speaking Naturally しぜんにはなすこと

### □ Dropping the topic of a sentence

It's very common in Japanese to drop the topic of a conversation once it has been introduced. In English, we constantly restate the topic directly or use "he", "she", "they" as a substitute. Spoken Japanese is much more like a match of tennis.

In Japanese, a topic is served and then discussed back and forth. Normally a topic is not mentioned again until a new topic is served.

To illustrate this, look at the following statements about my friend Michiko:

1. My friend is Michiko.
2. She lives in Japan.
3. She is 18 years old.
4. She is a college student.

In English, the topic "My friend" is introduced in the first sentence. Then in each following sentence, "she" is used to continually restate the topic. In Japanese, it's more natural to not say "she" over and over again. Instead, what would be considered incomplete sentences in English are used. This makes for much more natural conversation.

The English equivalent if spoken in Japanese would look like this:

- |                          |                                           |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1. My friend is Michiko. | Watashi no tomodachi wa Michiko san desu. |
| 2. Lives in Japan.       | Nihon ni sunde i masu.                    |
| 3. Is 18 years old.      | Ju う hassa i desu.                        |
| 4. Is a college student. | Da i gakuse i desu.                       |

As you read the example Q&A in the next section, look for places where the topic is NOT repeated.

## 2 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

### 1. Which one is it? (four items)

- It is this one.  
It is that one.  
It is that one over there.

### Dore desu ka.

- Kore desu.  
Sore desu.  
Are desu.

### 2. What is this?

- This is a pillow.  
This is a computer.  
It's a blanket.

### Kore wa nan desu ka.

- Kore wa makura desu.  
Kore wa konpyu-ta- desu.  
Mo う fu desu.

### 3. Is this a vegetable?

- Yes, it's a vegetable.  
No, it's a fruit.  
Yes, it's lettuce.

### Kore wa yasa i desu ka.

- Ha i, yasa i desu.  
Ii e, furu-ts u desu.  
Ha i, retasu desu.

### 4. Which one a vegetable? (two items)

- This one is.  
That one is.  
I don't know.

### Yasa i wa docchi desu ka.

- Kocchi desu.  
Socchi desu.  
Wakarimasen.

### 5. What is that?

- That is soap.  
This is a towel.  
It's a futon.

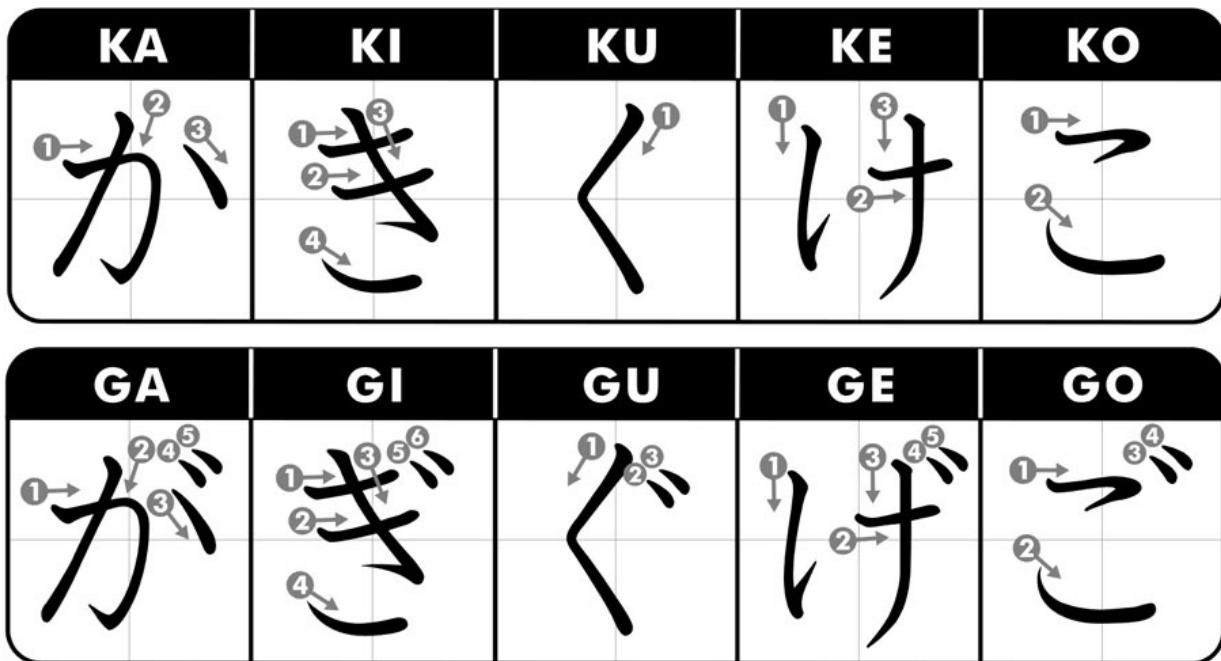
### Sore wa nan desu ka.

- Sore wa sekken desu.  
Kore wa taoru desu.  
Futon desu.

## Hiragana かきくけこ

### か New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.



### か Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.

か	か	か	か	か
き	き	き	き	き
く	く	く	く	く
け	け	け	け	け
こ	こ	こ	こ	こ

が	が	が	が	が
ぎ	ぎ	ぎ	ぎ	ぎ
ぐ	ぐ	ぐ	ぐ	ぐ
げ	げ	げ	げ	げ
ご	ご	ご	ご	ご

## か Writing Points かくポイント

### □ The dakuten

The only difference between *ka ki ku ke ko* and *ga gi gu ge go* are the last two small strokes up in the right hand corner. Those strokes are called *dakuten*. You will see them often in future lessons.

### □ Writing が (ga) the correct way

When adding *dakuten* to か (ka) to make it が (ga), make sure that they are shorter than the third stroke. The third stroke of が should always be longer than the *dakuten*.

	INCORRECT
	INCORRECT
	CORRECT

### □ The different versions of き (ki)

You may have noticed in the *Various Styles* section of this lesson that there are two versions of *ki*. It is your choice which version you use. You will see both versions in Japan.

	This version has four strokes and is very common when writing. Many Japanese people write using this version.
	This version has combined the third and fourth strokes into one stroke. It is very common in printed text such as books and magazines.

## か Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

ka	か	か						
ki	き	き						
ku	く	く						
ke	け	け						
ko	こ	こ						

ga	が	が						
gi	ぎ	ぎ						
gu	ぐ	ぐ						
ge	げ	げ						
go	ご	ご						

## か Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. ki い ro (yellow)

2. ki ku (to listen)

3. ka minari (lightning)

4. ku う gu n (air force)

5. ko ke (moss)

6. い ku (to go)

7. ke mushi (caterpillar)

8. ku う ko う (airport)

9. gi n い ro (silver color)

10. ki n'ni ku (muscle)

11. go go (afternoon)

12. ko お ri (ice)

## か Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

き  
(tree)

<input type="text"/>						
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

かく  
(to write)

<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

いか  
(squid)

<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

かぎ  
(key)

<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

かお  
(face)


かい  
(shell)


あか  
(red)


ごご  
(afternoon)


がいこく  
(foreign country)


おおきい  
(big)

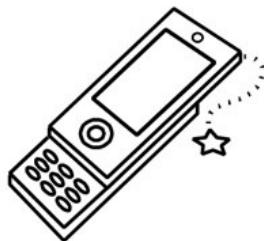

くうこう  
(airport)


**か**

## Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば



tsu き  
the moon



けい ta i denwa  
cell phone



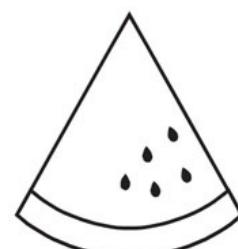
かぎ  
key



cho き n ba こ  
safe, piggy  
bank



かく  
to write



すいか  
watermelon

か

## Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

き

い

く

か

え

ご

け

・ i

・ go

・ ka

・ ki

・ ku

・ ke

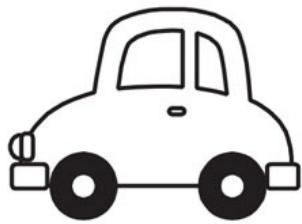
・ e

## 2 Lesson Activities

### □ Question and answer 1

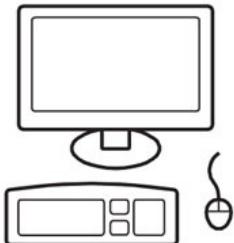
Answer the following questions in Japanese by looking at the pictures.

1. こ<sup>れ</sup>は な<sup>ん</sup> で<sup>す</sup> か?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

2. こ<sup>れ</sup>は な<sup>ん</sup> で<sup>す</sup> か?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

3. こ<sup>れ</sup>は か<sup>が</sup> み<sup>で</sup> す<sup>か</sup>?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

4. こ<sup>れ</sup>は や<sup>さ</sup>い<sup>で</sup> す<sup>か</sup>?

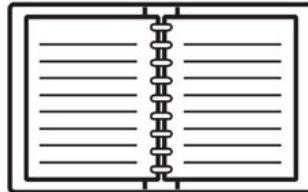


Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

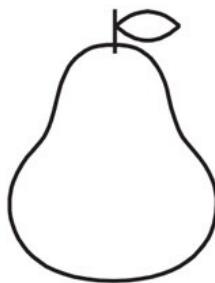
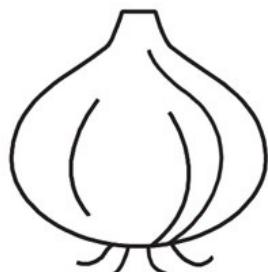
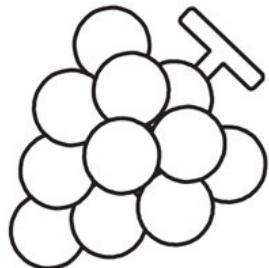
**□ Question and answer 2**

Circle the correct item and answer with は *re desu* or は *cchi desu*.

1. Hon wa dore desu か?



2. Yasa い wa dore desu か?



3. Furu-tsū wa docchi desu か?



**□ Question and answer 3**

Fill in the question being asked by the girl (Q:) and the answer given by the woman (A:) in the following pictures. (Write your answers in Japanese)

1.



Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

2.



Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

3.



Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

4.



Q: \_\_\_\_\_

A: \_\_\_\_\_

## □ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into English.

1.
<b>Sato こ san:</b> Sore wa hon desu か.
<b>Sho う ta san:</b> いいえ, zasshi desu.
<b>Sato こ san:</b> Mo う い chido い tte < dasa い. Nan desu か.
<b>Sho う ta san:</b> こ re wa zasshi desu.
Sato こ san:
Sho う ta san:
Sato こ san:
Sho う ta san:

## □ English translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

1.
<b>Japanese person:</b> Can you speak Japanese?
<b>American person:</b> A little.
<b>Japanese person:</b> What is that over there?
<b>American person:</b> That is a car.
<b>Japanese person:</b> Thank you.
Japanese person:
American person:
Japanese person:
American person:
Japanese person:

## 2 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Retasu wa nan desu か。
2. Hon wa socchi desu.
3. Tada い ma.
4. Rin ご wa furu-tsū desu.
5. こ re wa yasa い desu か。
6. Nihon ご o benkyō う shiteimasu.
7. あ re wa かが mi desu.
8. く ruma wa dore desu か。
9. Yasa い desu.
10. Nihon ごが hanasemasu か。

## 2 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

The sentence from the previous lesson was: Nan desu か。 (What is it?). In this lesson we learned how to attach a topic to the question. Let's look at the new sentence:

こ re wa nan desu か。  
What is this?

## Vocabulary Groups

### C family

#### Progressive

おかあ san

おとう san

おじい san

おばあ san

あか chan

#### Kana

おかあさん

おとうさん

おじいさん

おばあさん

あかちゃん

#### Kanji

お母さん

お父さん

おじいさん

おばあさん

赤ちゃん

#### English

mother

father

grandfather

grandmother

baby

### D greetings and farewells

#### Progressive

ありがとう

おはようございます

おやすみなさい

こんにちわ

さようなら

#### Kana

ありがとうございます

おはようございます

おやすみなさい

こんにちわ

さようなら

#### Kanji

ありがとうございます

おはようございます

お休みなさい

今日は

さようなら

#### English

thank you, thanks

good morning

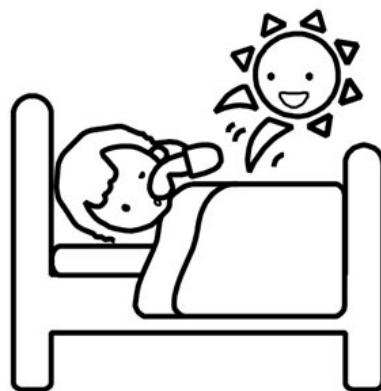
good night

good afternoon

good bye, farewell



おとうさん



おはようございます



おかあさん

Lesson

**3**

Level ①

**Possession**

Whose is this?

**3 About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read かきくけこ, がぎぐげご
2. Understand how to use the question words *dore* and *dochii* and the topic marker *wa*
3. Review vocabulary groups C and D.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn to show possession using the particle *no*
2. Learn how to use the subject marker *ga*

**From The Teachers**

1. It's common to mix up *dare* (who) and *dore* (which one). It's also common to mix up *watashi* (me) and *あ nata* (you). Try to avoid these mistakes.

**3 New Words あたらしい ことは**

Progressive	Hiragana	Kanji	English
dare	だれ	誰	who?
watashi	わたし	私	I, me (male or female)
ぼく	ぼく	僕	I, me (males only)
あなた	あなた	貴方	you
かのじょ	かのじょ	彼女	her, she, girlfriend
かれ	かれ	彼	him, he, boyfriend
なまえ	なまえ	名前	name
ともだち	ともだち	友達	friend
たぶん	たぶん	多分	maybe
がっこう	がっこう	学校	school

tori	とり	鳥	bird
sensei	せんせい	先生	teacher
nihonご no sensei	にほんごの せんせい	日本語の先生	Japanese teacher

### 3 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

#### 1. Soう desu.

**That's right.**

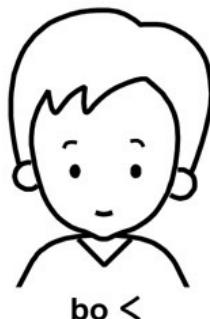
This phrase is used to affirm that something said is true or correct. It doesn't need to always be translated as "That's right." It can be translated into a variety of similar phrases such as: "You are right," "It is," or even just simply "Yes."

#### 2. Chiがい masu.

**That's wrong.**

This phrase is used when something is false or incorrect. It doesn't always have to be translated as "That's wrong." It can mean a variety of similar phrases such as: "It's different," "It isn't," and "No."

### 3 Culture Clip: Interesting information about bo <



The word *bo <* means "me" or "I," and normally only males use it. It can be masculine or cute depending on the usage. It should only be used in casual conversation.

Also, when talking to little boys, it is very common to call them *bo <* when their name is not known. For example, if someone is talking to a little boy and you hear them say, "*Bo < wa nansa i desu ka*," it means "How old are you?" and not "How old am I?"

#### Can girls use *bo <*?

Even though *bo <* is normally a male word, you will hear it in songs sung by female singers. This is sometimes done when the girl is singing from a male perspective or when the girl is trying to sound boyish. Despite this, you will probably never hear a girl use *bo <* in conversation. However, you will often hear young girls say *あたし tashi* as an informal and cute way of saying *wata <*.

### 3 Grammar ぶんぽう

#### □ The question word *dare*

You can use the question word *dare* just as *nan*, *dore* and *dochchi* are used.

##### Example Q&A

1. Nan desu か。  
< ruma desu.

What is it?

It is a car.

2. Dore desu か。  
Sore desu.

Which one is it?

It is that one.

3. Dare desu か。  
Tana か san desu.

Who is it?

It is Mr. Tanaka.

#### □ Using *wa* with *dare*

As we learned in lesson 2, you can specify a topic using the topic marker *wa*. Look at how the new question word *dare* (who) is used.

##### Example Q&A

1. あ nata wa dare desu か。  
Watashi wa こ bayashi desu.

Who are you?

I am Kobayashi.

2. か re wa dare desu か。  
か re wa tomodachi desu.

Who is he?

He is a friend.

3. Sense い wa dare desu か。  
Yamada san desu.

Who is the teacher?

It's Yamada san.

4. Tana か san wa dare desu か。  
Nihon ご no sense い desu.

Who is Tanaka san?

(She's / He's) a Japanese teacher.

## □ Assuming the topic based on context

Japanese conversation relies heavily on the context or "circumstances" of the conversation. Let's look at the sentence **Dare desu カ** which in the prior example was translated as "Who is it?". You might have noticed that there isn't any specific topic in this sentence.

It's not uncommon for sentences to lack a topic in Japanese. And as stated in the prior lesson, it isn't natural to continually say "he, she, you, I" in Japanese as we do in English.

Look at how the translation of *Dare desu カ* changes depending on the context.

### Example Conversations

1. **Context:** Looking at an unknown person in a photograph.

A: Dare desu カ。  
Who is this person?  
B: Tana カ' san desu.  
It is Mr. Tanaka.

The topic "this person" is assumed and doesn't need to be said.

2. **Context:** Someone you don't know calls you on the phone.

A: Dare desu カ。  
Who are you?  
B: Tana カ' desu.  
It's Tanaka.

You could have added **か nata wa** in front of the question, but the person knows you're speaking directly to him, so the topic can be dropped.

3. **Context:** Looking at a girl in the hallway.

A: Dare desu カ。  
Who is she?  
B: Mayumi desu.  
She is Mayumi.

You could have added **か nojo wa** in front of both of these sentences, but the conversation would not sound natural. The "she" part of the conversation does not need to be stated since the topic is obvious.

## □ Starting sentences with or without question words

In English it's common to start sentences with a question word. Look at the following English sentences that start with question words:

### Example Sentences

1. What is this?
2. Which one is your car?
3. Who are you?

Since it's so common to start sentences in English with a question word, many students of Japanese mistakenly believe you can always do the same thing in Japanese, but this is not the case.

In the following examples you will notice that the Japanese sentences DO NOT start with a question word even though the English sentences do. The question words have been underlined in both sentences.

### Example Sentences

1. C re wa nan desu か。  
What is this?
2. < ruma wa dore desu か。  
Which one is a car?
3. Tana か san wa dare desu か。  
Who is Tanaka?

### □ How to start a sentence with a question word using が

Even though you don't generally start a Japanese sentence with a question word, there are times when this is acceptable or necessary.

When a question word is the topic of the sentence, or when a question word is the FIRST word in a sentence, the topic/subject marker が instead of wa must be used.

However, if the items you are talking about have already been introduced or are in front of you, you can start a sentence with a question word as the topic.

In the following examples, the question words have been underlined in both sentences.

### Example Sentences

1. Dore が < ruma desu か。  
Which one is a car?
2. Dare が Tana か san desu か。  
Who is Tanaka?

Remember that the answer must follow the same pattern as the question, and therefore the answer must also use ガ as the topic/subject marker.

### Example Conversations

1. A: Dore ガ < ruma desu カ。  
B: Sore ガ < ruma desu.
2. A: Dare ガ Tana カ san desu カ。  
B: Tana カ san ガ tomodachi desu.

Which one is a car?

That's a car.

Who/which is Tanaka?

Tanaka is a friend.

### □ Making words possessive with the particle *no*

It is easy to convert words into their possessive form by adding *no* after them.

### Examples

mine	watashi no
mine	bo < no
yours	あ nata no
hers	か nojo no
his	か re no
whose	dare no

No also acts like the possessive 's in English when it follows a person's name and other words.

### Examples

Akiko's	あきこ no
Jeff's	Jeffu no
Mr. Tanaka's	Tana カ san no
Father's	おとう san no
Mother's	おかあ san no
Grandfather's	おじい san no
Grandmother's	おばあ san no

Using this concept in conversation is easy. If someone asks, **○ re wa dare no desu か** (Whose is this?) as they hold an object in their hand, you can use any of the following answers:

### Examples Answers

- |                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Watashi no desu.    | It's mine.          |
| 2. あ nata no desu.     | It's yours.         |
| 3. Tana か san no desu. | It's Mr. Tanaka's.  |
| 4. か nojo no desu.     | It's hers.          |
| 5. お ba あ san no desu. | It's grandmother's. |
| 6. か re no desu.       | It's his.           |
| 7. おかあ san no desu.    | It's mother's.      |

### □ Showing possession of objects using *no*

In the prior grammar section, you learned that the particle ***no*** is used to change words into their possessive form. The possessive form can be used by itself or followed by another word to show ownership. Try thinking of ***no*** as the glue that holds nouns together. You add objects after the possessive form as follows:

Tanaka      's      car      it is  
 Tanaka-san **no** kuma desu.

It is Tanaka's car.

### Examples

- |              |                           |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| my dog       | watashi <u>no</u> i nu    |
| your mother  | あ nata <u>no</u> okaa san |
| her cat      | か nojo <u>no</u> ne こ     |
| his dog      | か re <u>no</u> i nu       |
| father's pen | お to う san <u>no</u> pen  |

The particle ***no*** is not limited to linking only two items. It can be used to further clarify the object or item being discussed.

### Examples

- あ nata no か nojo no nama え  
 おかあ san no ne こ no nama え

- your girlfriend's name  
 mother's cat's name

Now let's put your new knowledge of **no** into practice. These sentences may appear long at first, but they're using the simple grammar you've learned already.

### Example Sentences

1. あ nata no カ nojo no nama え wa nan desu カ。  
What is your girlfriend's name?
2. Tana カ san no おかあ san wa nansai desu カ。  
How old is Tanaka san's mother?
3. こ bayashi san no おとう san wa dare desu カ。  
Who is Kobayashi san's father?

### 3 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

- 1. Who is it?**  
It's me.  
It's Hideko.  
It's Mom.  
  
Dare desu カ。  
Watashi desu.  
Hide こ desu.  
おかあ san desu.
- 2. Whose car is it?**  
It's my car.  
It's mine.  
It's Mr. Takada's car.  
I don't know.  
  
Dare no < ruma desu カ。  
Watashi no < ruma desu.  
Watashi no desu.  
Ta カ da san no < ruma desu.  
Wa カ rimasen.
- 3. Which one is your rabbit?**  
That one over there is my rabbit.  
It's that one.  
  
Docchi ガ あ nata no う sa ぎ desu カ。  
あ cchi ガ watashi no う sa ぎ desu.  
Socchi desu.
- 4. Is this your car?**  
Yes, it is.  
No, it's my friend's car.  
No, it's her car.  
No, it's hers.  
  
こ re wa あ nata no < ruma desu カ。  
Ha い, so う desu.  
いいえ、tomodachi no < ruma desu.  
いいえ、か nojo no < ruma desu.  
いいえ、か nojo no desu.
- 5. Which one is your bird?**  
My bird is that one.  
  
あ nata no tori wa dore desu カ。  
Bo < no tori wa sore desu.

### 3 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

1. あ nata no ne こ wa dore desu か。  
Watashi no ne こ wa sore desu.  
Watashi no ne こ wa あ re desu.
- Which one is your cat?  
My cat is that one.  
My cat is that one over there.
2. おかあ san no nama え wa nan desu か。  
Maria desu.  
Yoshi こ desu.
- What is (your) mother's name?  
It's Maria.  
It's Yoshiko.
3. Sore wa か nojo no taoru desu か。  
いいえ、か re no taoru desu.  
いいえ、Mami こ san no taoru desu.
- Is that her towel?  
No, it's his towel.  
No, it's Mamiko's towel.
4. あ nata no tomodachi no い nu no  
nama え wa nan desu か。  
い nu no nama え wa Pochi desu.  
Wa か rimasen.
- What is your friend's dog's name?  
The dog's name is Pochi.  
I don't know.

### 3 Reading Comprehension どっかい

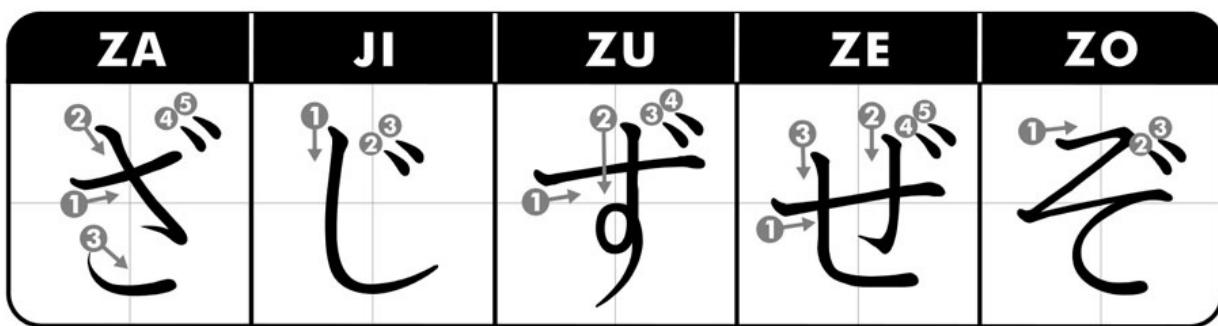
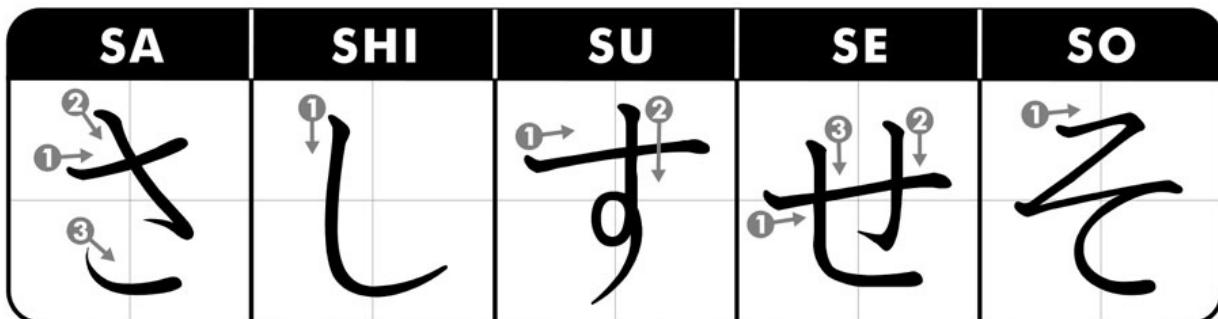
Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

- ① Watashi no nama え wa Honda desu.
- ② Sanju うご sa い desu.
- ③ Watashi no か nojo no nama え wa Terada desu.
- ④ か nojo wa niju う kyu う sa い desu.

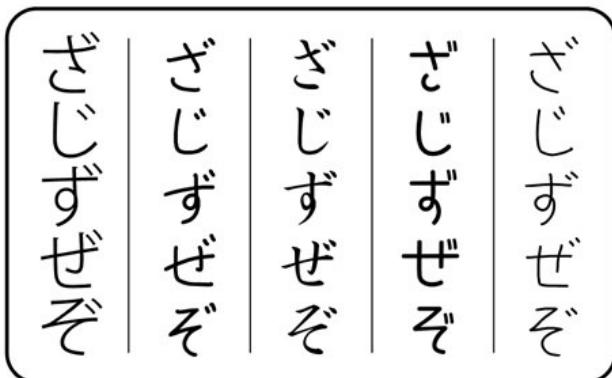
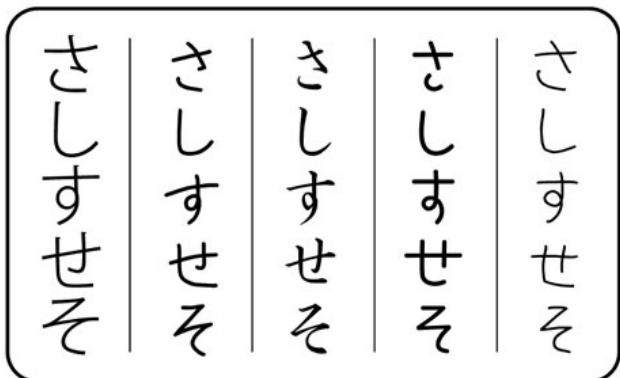


**Hiragana さしすせそ****さ New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな**

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.

**さ Various Styles スタイル**

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.



## さ Writing Points かくポイント

### □ The different versions of さ (sa) and そ (so)

You may have noticed in the *Various Styles* section of this lesson that there are two versions of sa and so. You can write whichever version you choose, so long as it is legible.

Different versions of さ (sa)	
	This version has three strokes and is very common when writing. Most Japanese people use this version when writing.
	This version has combined the second and third strokes into one stroke. It is very common in printed text.

Different versions of そ (so)	
	This version has two strokes and is common when writing. Many Japanese people write using this version.
	This version similar to version above except that the first and second stroke are touching.
	This version has only one stroke and is very common in printed text. It is also acceptable for writing.

**さ** Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

sa	さ	さ						
shi	し	し						
su	す	す						
se	せ	せ						
so	そ	そ						

za	ざ	ざ						
ji	じ	じ						
zu	づ	づ						
ze	ぜ	ぜ						
zo	ぞ	ぞ						

**さ****Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう**

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. mura      き (purple)  
sa

2.             su (to point)  
sa su

3.       ro (white)  
shi

4.       tsugyo      う (graduation)  
so

5.             shi (sushi)

6.       か n (time)  
ji

7.       ru (monkey)  
sa

8. お      い      n (grandfather)  
ji sa

9. あ       (sweat)  
se

10. あn      n (safety)  
ze

11.       う (elephant)  
zo

12. げn      い (currently, at present)  
za

**さ****Words You Can Write かける ことば**

Write the following words using the hiragana that you have just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

しか  
(deer)

<input type="text"/>				
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

すし  
(sushi)

<input type="text"/>				
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

すずしい  
(cool)

<input type="text"/>				
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

おそい  
(slow/late)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

あし  
(legs/feet)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

いす  
(chair)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

すき  
(like)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

すうじ  
(number)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

すいか  
(watermelon)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

せかい  
(world)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

かず  
(numbers)

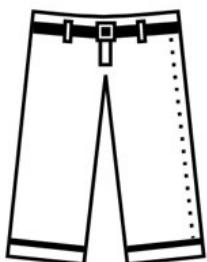
--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

うし  
(cow)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

**さ**

## Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうのことば



す bon  
pants



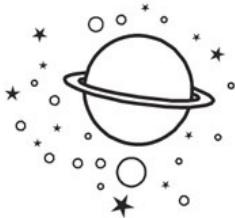
し nbun  
newspaper



tsu くえ  
desk



さ mu い  
cold



わくせい  
planet



すし  
sushi

**さ**

## Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

す	・	• za
し	・	• su
え	・	• ku
こ	・	• shi
ざ	・	• i
あ	・	• e
く	・	• ko
い	・	• a

### 3 Lesson Activities

#### □ Question and answer 1

Answer the following questions in Japanese by looking at the pictures.

1. Dare de すか?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

2. Jenny さ n de すか?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

3. Dare no tori de すか?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

4. Dare no おかあさ n de すか?



Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

#### □ Question and answer 2

Answer the following questions in Japanese as if they were being asked to you directly.  
Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. あ nata no nama え wa nan de すか。

\_\_\_\_\_

2. お ba あさ n no nama え wa nan de すか。

---

3. おかあさ n no < ruma wa nan de すか。

---

4. おじいさ n wa nan さい de すか。

---

5. お to うさ n wa nan さい de すか。

---

#### □ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into English.

1.

こ baya し さ n: こ re wa dare no hon de すか。

Na か ya さ n: Wa か rima せ n, tabun Tana かさ n no hon de す。

こ baya し さ n:

Na か ya さ n:

#### □ English translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

1.

Terada san: Are you Mr. Tanaka?

Yamada san: No, I am Yamada. Who is Mr. Tanaka?

Terada san: Mr. Tanaka is Ms. Kobayashi's friend.

Terada san:

Yamada san:

Terada san:

**□ Reading comprehension questions**

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. Honda さ n no か nojo no nama え wa Tana かさ n de すか。

---

2. Terada さ n wa dare de すか。

---

3. Terada さ n wa Yamada さ n no か nojo de すか。

---

4. Terada さ n wa nan さい de すか。

---

**□ What would you say?**

What would you say in the following situations?

1. when you are saying good bye

---

2. when you greet someone in the morning

---

3. when you don't know the answer to a question

---

4. when you want to show your thanks to someone

---

## □ Short dialogue

Mr. Yoshida saw Ms. Ueki on the street and they started a conversation.

<b>Yo shi da sa n:</b>	うえきさ n, こ nnichiwa.
<b>うえきさ n:</b>	こ nnichiwa, Yo shi da sa n.
	お hi さし buri de す。
	お to うさ n wa げ'n き de すか?
<b>Yo shi da sa n:</b>	Ha i, げ'n き de す。 (looking at the big bag Ueki san is holding)
	そ re wa nan de すか?
<b>うえきさ n:</b>	こ re wa kamera de す。 Wata shi no shumi de す。
<b>Yo shi da sa n:</b>	すごい de す ne.
<b>うえきさ n:</b>	Yo shi da sa n no shumi wa nan de すか?
<b>Yo shi da sa n:</b>	Wata shi no shumi wa gorufu de す。



### New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	English
お hi さし buri de す。	It's been a long time. / Long time no see.
_____ wa げ'n き de すか。	Is _____ healthy / doing fine? (Are you fine?)
げ'n き de す。	They're fine. / I'm fine.
kamera	camera
shumi	hobby
すごい de す ne.	That's great. / That's awesome.
gorufu	golf

## □ Short dialogue activities

Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.

Change the dialogue to add your own hobbies (*shumi*) .

### 3 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point.

1. こ re wa あ nata no ne こ de すか。
2. あ nata no tomodachi no nama え wa nan de すか。
3. いいえ、chi がい ma す。
4. そ re wa dare no < ruma de すか。
5. Tana かさ n wa wata し no tomodachi de す。

### 3 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced. In this lesson we learned possession concepts. Let's look at the new sentence:

こ re wa あ nata no おかあさ n no < ruma de すか。  
Is this your mother's car?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 1: Nan de すか。  
What is it?

Lesson 2: こ re wa nan de すか。  
What is this?

**Vocabulary Groups****E animals**

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
い nu	いぬ	犬	dog
ね こ	ねこ	猫	cat
ぞう	ぞう	象	elephant
う ma	うま	馬	horse
うさぎ	うさぎ	兔	rabbit
panda	パンダ	パンダ	panda
ね ずみ	ねずみ	鼠	mouse
raion	ライオン	ライオン	lion
き rin	きりん	麒麟	giraffe
うし	うし	牛	cow
さ ru	さる	猿	monkey
hitsu じ	ひつじ	羊	sheep
き tsune	きつね	狐	fox
く ma	くま	熊	bear



Lesson

**4**

Level ①

**Colors and Adjectives**

Making lists

**4****About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read さしすせぞ, ざじすぜぞ.
2. Understand how to use the question word *dare* and the particles *no* and *が*.
3. Review vocabulary group E.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn how to use the noun and adjective forms of colors.
2. Learn how to use the Japanese version of “and”.

**From The Teachers**

1. Memorize the colors.
2. Make sure that you understand the different types of adjectives introduced in this lesson.

**4****New Words あたらしい ことは**

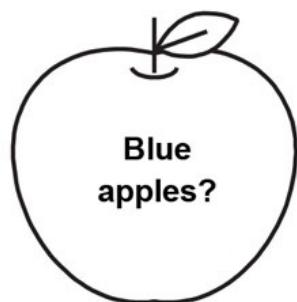
Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
nani i ro	なにいろ	何色	what color?
i ro	いろ	色	color
あか	あか	赤	red
あお	あお	青	blue
くろ	くろ	黒	black
しろ	しろ	白	white
cha i ro	ちゃいろ	茶色	brown
きいろ	きいろ	黄色	yellow
orenji	オレンジ	オレンジ	orange

mura さき	むらさき	紫	purple
pinku	ピンク	ピンク	pink
guree	グレー	グレー	gray
ha いい ro	はいいろ	灰色	gray
mi ずい ro	みずいろ	水色	light blue
midori	みどり	緑	green
きんいろ	きんいろ	金色	gold
ぎんいろ	ぎんいろ	銀色	silver
とうめい	とうめい	透明	clear

## 4 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

- |                                     |              |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1. Excuse me. / I'm sorry.          | すみません。       |
| 2. I am sorry. / Please forgive me. | ごめんなさい。      |
| 3. What is it in Japanese?          | 日本語で何ですか。    |
| 4. What is it in English?           | 英語で何ですか。     |
| 5. It's _____ in English.           | 英語で_____です。  |
| 6. It's _____ in Japanese.          | 日本語で_____です。 |

## 4 Culture Clip: Green is Blue?



Japanese people sometimes refer to what we call “green” as “blue.” For example, in Japan, when vegetables are not ripe they are referred to as blue, not green. A green apple isn’t green – it’s blue. Green traffic lights are called “blue” even though the colors used for traffic lights in Japan are exactly the same as in America. So keep this in mind when someone yells to you, “Hey, let’s go! The light is blue!”

There is a prefecture in the northern part of Japan’s main island Honshuu called Aomori, which literally means “blue forest.” Well then, what color is the sky in Japan, you ask? Blue, of course!

## 4 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ The particle *to*

**To** is the equivalent of English “and.” It must come between every word in a list. **To** cannot be used to link sentences together.

#### Examples

- |                                                       |                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. あお <u>to</u> mura さき <u>to</u> pinku               | blue, purple, and pink.          |
| 2. wata <u>し</u> <u>to</u> あ nata <u>to</u> tana かさ n | me, you and Tanaka san           |
| 3. い nu <u>to</u> ne こ <u>to</u> う ma <u>to</u> buta  | a dog, a cat, a horse, and a pig |

#### Example Sentences

1. Wata し no < ruma wa < ro to ぎ n い ro です。

My car is black and silver.

2. Tomodachi no ne こ wa cha い ro to し ro です。

My friend's cat is brown and white.



rinご to すいか to banana



いnu to neこ to うさぎ

### Making nouns into adjectives using *no*

Up until now, **no** has been used to mark possession. **No** is also used to create a “noun adjective” or what we call a “**no** adjective”. When **no** is added after a noun, that noun becomes an adjective. The noun that comes before the **no** describes the word that comes after the **no**.

[noun 1] + no + [noun 2]

#### Examples

1. Japanese food  
nihon (Japan) + tabemono (food) = nihon no tabemono
2. American cars  
Amerika (America) + < ruma = Amerika no < ruma
3. Japanese book  
nihon ご (Japanese language) + hon (book) = nihon ご no hon

## □ Using colors to describe

In this lesson, the colors are introduced in their noun form. To make the color an adjective you must link the words with ***no***. To say "green car" in Japanese, you would say **mi ど ri no < ruma**. This type of adjective is called a ***no*** adjective. With the noun forms of colors you CANNOT say, for example, **mi ど ri < ruma** to mean "green car."

### English

what color car?  
a white rabbit  
a brown monkey  
a black bear  
a green pillow

### incorrect

nani い ro < ruma  
shiro うさぎ  
cha い ro さ ru  
< ro < ma  
midori ma < ra

### correct

nani い ro no < ruma  
shiro no うさぎ  
cha い ro no さ ru  
< ro no < ma  
midori no ma < ra

### Example Sentences

- あか no < ruma wa あ nata no de す ka.  
Is the red car yours?
- Dare no pinku no いえ de すか。  
Whose pink house is that?
- Pinku no ma < ra wa bo < no de す。  
The pink pillow is mine.

## □ い adjectives

Some of the colors also have an **い** adjective form. An **い** adjective always ends with **い** and never requires ***no*** when describing other words - it is simply placed in front of the word it is to modify. Only the following colors have **い** adjective forms:

## 4 Color Adjective Forms

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
あかい	あかい	赤い	red
あおい	あおい	青い	blue
< ro い	くろい	黒い	black
し ro い	しろい	白い	white
cha い ro い	ちゃいろい	茶色い	brown
きい ro い	きいろい	黄色い	yellow

**Examples**

- |                           |                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <u>あかい</u> ク ruma      | a <u>red</u> car   |
| 2. <u>あおい</u> pen         | a <u>blue</u> pen  |
| 3. <u>cha い ro い</u> ne こ | a <u>brown</u> cat |
| 4. <u>し ro い い</u> nu     | a <u>white</u> dog |

Whether you use the *い* adjective or *no* adjective version of a color is your choice. Just remember that not all colors have an *い* adjective version.

English	<i>い</i> adjective	<i>の</i> adjective
a yellow giraffe	<u>きい</u> ro い き rin	<u>きい</u> ro no き rin
a blue car	<u>あおい</u> ク ruma	<u>あお</u> no ク ruma
a brown horse	<u>cha い ro い</u> う ma	<u>cha い ro no</u> う ma
a red fruit	<u>あかい</u> furu-tsu	<u>あか</u> no furu-tsu

**4****Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J**

- What color is it?**  
It's black.  
It's pink.  
It's purple and orange.  
  
**Nani い ro de すか。**  
ク ro de す。  
Pinku de す。  
Mura さき to orenji de す。
- What color car is it?**  
It's a green car.  
It's a red and blue car.  
It's a yellow car.  
  
**Nani い ro no ク ruma de すか。**  
Midori no ク ruma de す。  
あか to あお no ク ruma de す。  
きい ro no ク ruma de す。
- Is your toothbrush blue?**  
No, mine is white.  
No, mine is yellow.  
  
**あ nata no haburashi wa あお de すか。**  
いいえ、wa たし no wa し ro de す。  
いいえ、wa たし no wa きい ro de す。
- What color is this?**  
This is blue.  
It's purple.  
  
**こ re wa nani い ro de すか。**  
こ re wa あお de す。  
Mura さき de す。
- Is your cat black and white?**  
No, it is brown and grey.  
  
**あ nata no ne こ wa ク ro to し ro de すか。**  
いいえ、cha い ro to guree de す。

## 6. Whose car is the silver car?

Maybe it is Yoshida san's.

ぎ n い ro no < ruma wa dare no de すか。

Tabun Yo し da さ n no de す。

## 4 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

## 1. あか de すか。

Ha い、そ う de す。

いいえ、chi がい ma す。

**Is it red?**

Yes, it is.

No, it's not.

## 2. Mo う fu wa nani い ro de すか。

し ro い de す。

あかい de す。

あお to midori de す。

**What color is the blanket?**

It is white.

It is red.

It is blue and green.

## 3. Ma &lt; ra wa nani い ro de すか。

Ma < ra wa midori de す。

Mura さき de す。

< ro de す。

Wa か rima せ n.

**What color is the pillow?**

The pillow is green.

It is purple.

It is black.

I don't know.

## 4. Koppu wa cha い ro de すか。

Ha い、そ う de す。

いいえ、chi がい ma す。

いいえ、きい ro de す。

**Is the cup brown?**

Yes, it is.

No, it isn't.

No, it is yellow.

## 5. Cha い ro no う ma wa あ nata no de すか。

いいえ、し ro no う ma de す。

**Is the brown horse yours?**

No, it is the white horse.

## 6. あ nata no おかあさ n no うさぎ wa nani い ro de すか。

Wa か rima せ n.

し ro to cha い ro de す。

**What color is your mother's rabbit?**

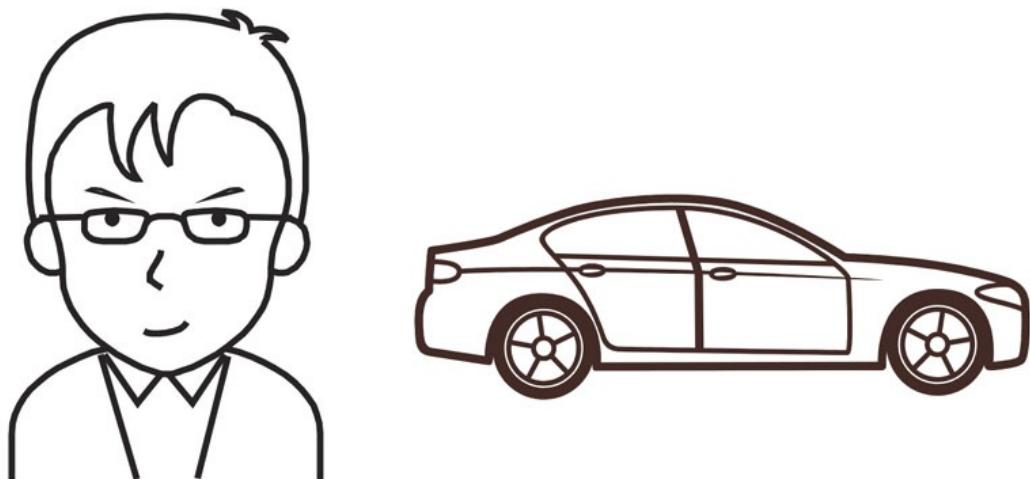
I don't know.

It is white and brown.

## 4 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

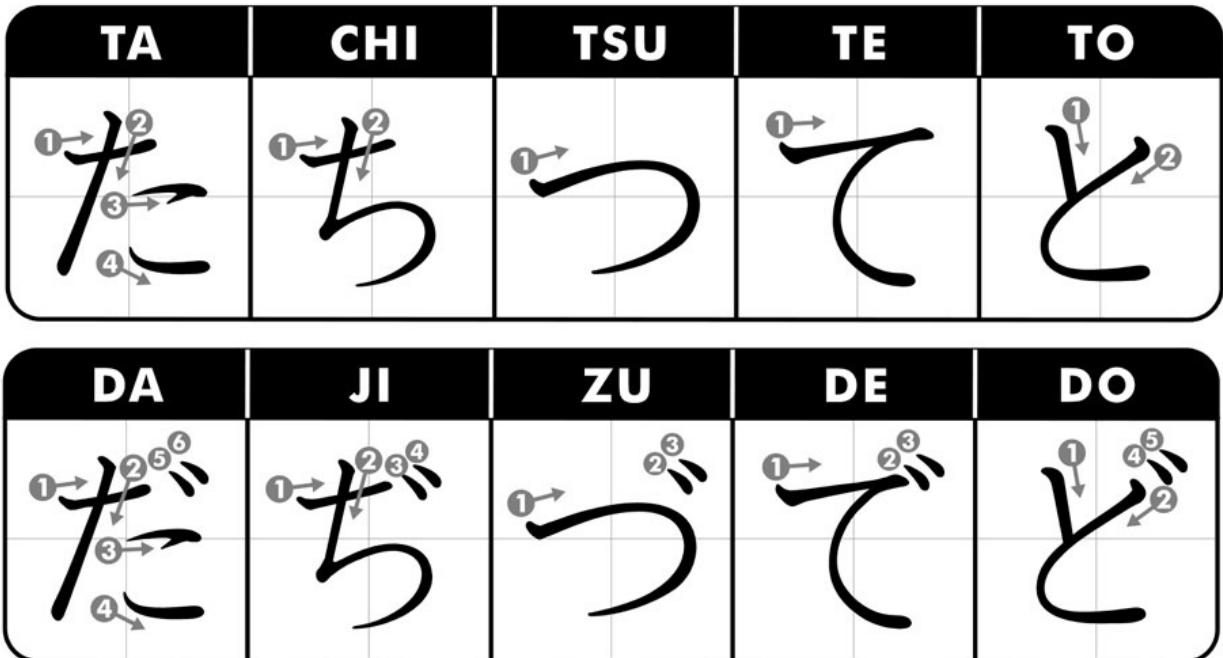
- ① Jun こさ n wa niju うござい de す。
- ② か nojo no お to うさ n wa ご ju う ni さい de す。
- ③ お to うさ n no nama え wa Yo し hiro de す。
- ④ Jun こさ n to Jun こさ n no お to うさ n no < ruma wa Honda de す。
- ⑤ お to うさ n no < ruma wa mura さき de す。
- ⑥ Jun こさ n no < ruma wa pinku to あお de す。



## Hiragana たちつてと

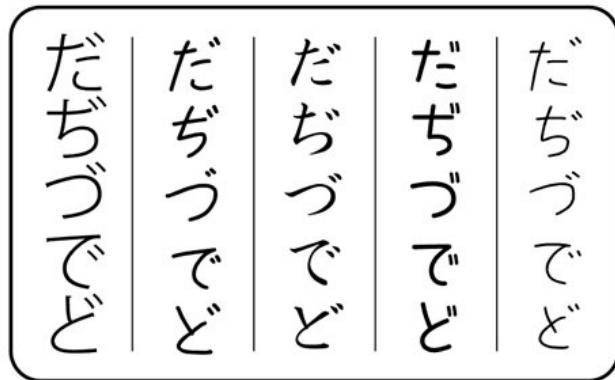
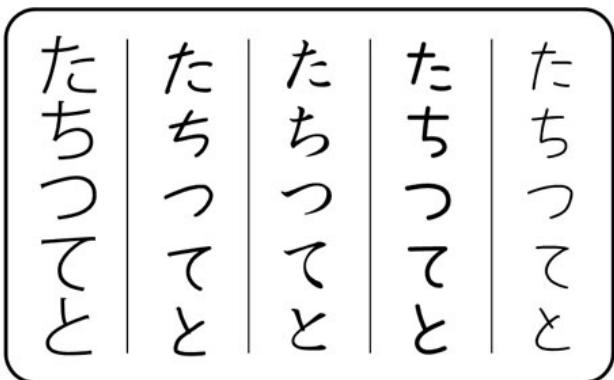
### た New Hiragana あたらしいひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.



### た Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.



## た Writing Points かくポイント

### □ The double consonants

The double consonants (*kk*, *pp*, *tt*, *cch*) are stressed with a slight pause before the consonant. To represent them in hiragana, a small *つ* is used.\* The small *つ* is always placed in front of the hiragana that needs to be doubled.

#### Examples

school

gakkou

がっこう

magazine

zasshi

ざっし

postage stamp

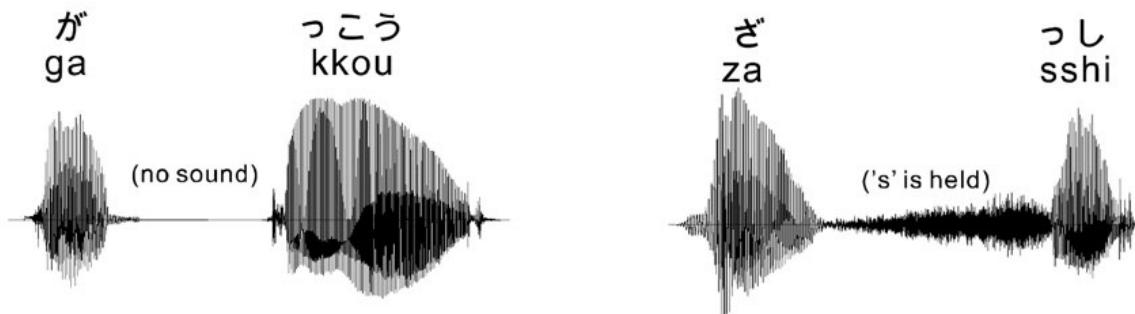
kitte

きって

\* Make sure to write the *つ* smaller than normal to avoid confusion with a normal *つ*.

### □ The double consonant sound analysis

If you look at the sound wave for a word that has a double consonant, you will see a pause or visible space before the consonant. Look at the two samples below:



### □ Which version of *zu* and *ji* should be used?

There are two versions of *zu* and *ji*. The first set is in Lesson 3 and the second set is taught in this lesson. *づ* and *じ* from Lesson 3 are the most commonly used versions. *づ* and *ぢ* are used in only a few words, such as **はなぢ** (nosebleed) and **つづく** (to continue). As you learn more vocabulary, pay attention to the hiragana that's used when you see these sounds. If you're not sure about what version to use, try *づ* and *じ* and 90% of the time you will be correct.

**た** Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

ta	た	た						
chi	ち	ち						
tsu	つ	つ						
te	て	て						
to	と	と						

da	だ	だ						
ji	ぢ	ぢ						
zu	づ	づ						
de	で	で						
do	ど	ど						

## た Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. wa        shi (me, I)  
ta

2.               da (free, no charge)  
ta      da

3.               tsu (to stand)  
ta      tsu

4.               ze n (all of a sudden)  
to      tsu

5.               mu (to shrink)  
chi     ji

6.                      u (to help)  
te      tsu      da

7. i        i (it hurts, ouch)  
ta

8. o        u sa n (father)  
to

9. hana        (nose bleed)  
ji

10. i ki        mari (dead end)  
do

11.        nwa (telephone)  
de

12.               < (to reach, arrive)  
to      do

## た Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

ただ  
(free)


つぎ  
(next)


ちず  
(map)


かど  
(corner)


ちち  
(my father)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

たつ  
(to stand)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

ざっし  
(magazine)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

きって  
(postage stamp)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

あつい  
(hot)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

たいいく  
(phys. ed.)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

つづき  
(continuation)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

とおい  
(far)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

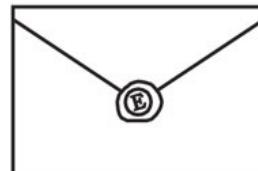
## た Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうのことば



でんし renji  
microwave oven



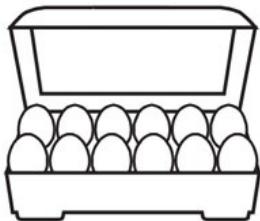
ほんだいな  
bookshelf



ふうとう  
envelope



て  
hand



た ma ご  
eggs



くつした  
socks

## た Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

て •

• tsu

つ •

• da

さ •

• chi

ち •

• te

す •

• u

ぢ •

• ji

う •

• sa

だ •

• su

## 4 Lesson Activities

### □ Question and answer 1

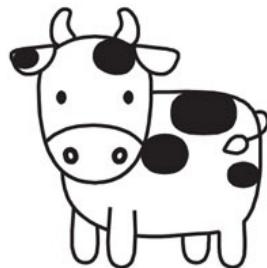
Answer the following questions by looking at the pictures.

1. こ re wa nihon ごで nan ですか？



Answer:

2. こ re wa nihon ごで nan ですか？



Answer:

3. こ re wa えいごで nan ですか？



Answer:

4. こ re wa えいごで nan ですか？



Answer:

### □ Question and answer 2

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you know.

1. あ na た no < ruma wa nani i ro ですか。

2. あ na た no haburashi wa nani i ro ですか。

3. Panda wa nani iroですか。

---

4. Banana wa nani iroですか。

---

5. ぞう wa gure—ですか。

---

## □ What would you say?

What would you say in the following situations?

1. after you stepped on someone's foot by mistake

---

2. when you want to know what color someone's dog is

---

3. when someone asks you if you are Mr. Tanaka

---

4. when you want to know how to say something in Japanese

---

## □ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversations into English. Then, in the space after the number write where you think the conversation is taking place and if it is polite, informal or mixed.

1.

たかださ n: < ruma wa nani い ro ですか。

かどたさ n: Wa たし no < ruma ですか。

たかださ n: Ha い。

かどたさ n: Mura さきです。あ na た no < ruma wa... ?

たかださ n: Wa たし no < ruma wa ぎ n い ro と き n い ro です。

たかださ n:

かどたさ n:

たかださ n:

かどたさ n:

たかださ n:

## □ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. Jun こさ n no < ruma wa nani い ro ですか。

- 
2. だ re no < ruma が Honda ですか。

- 
3. だ re no < ruma が mura さき ですか。

- 
4. Jun こさ n wa nan さい ですか。

- 
5. だ re が ご ju う ni さい ですか。

## □ Short dialogue

Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Kobayashi are talking about their cars.

こ baya し さ n: た na かさ n の < ruma wa nan ですか。

た na か さ n: Wa たしの ① < ruma wa ② Nissan です。  
あ na た no wa?

こ baya し さ n: Wa たしの ① < ruma wa ③ Mitsubishi です。  
い ro wa ④ あか です。

た na か さ n: そうですか。  
Wa たしの ① < ruma wa ⑤ し ro です。

## □ Short dialogue activity

Practice reading the above dialogue in pairs.

Substitute ①~⑤ using the words below and try the conversation again.

1. ① Dog  
② (your choice)  
③ (your choice)  
④ Brown  
⑤ Black and white



2. ① Cat  
② (your choice)  
③ (your choice)  
④ Gray  
⑤ Brown and white



3. ① Cell Phone (けいたいで nwa)  
② (your choice)  
③ (your choice)  
④ Red  
⑤ Blue



## □ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana, but you will also learn new words.

えきたい  
ちいき  
こうあつ

liquid, fluid  
region  
high pressure

ちえ  
ていあつ  
げっこう

wisdom  
low pressure  
moonlight

## 4 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. す mima セ n.
2. Nihon ごで nan ですか。
3. Nani い ro ですか。
4. Wa たし no < ruma wa あかと < ro です。
5. た na かさ n no < ruma wa あおい Toyota です。

## 4 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

**あ na た no おかあさ n no < ruma wa し ro い ですか。  
Is your mother's car white?**

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 1: Nan ですか。  
What is it?

Lesson 2: こ re wa nan ですか。  
What is this?

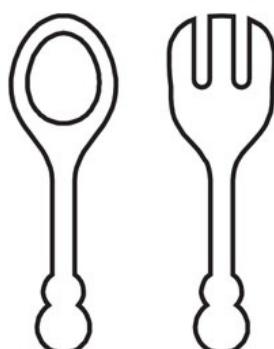
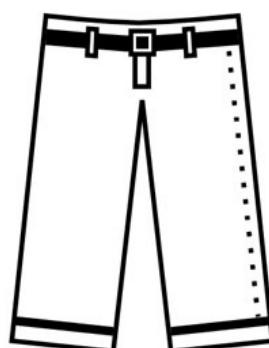
Lesson 3: こ re wa あ na た no おかあさ n no < ruma ですか。  
Is this your mother's car?

**Vocabulary Groups****F things around the house**

<b>Progressive</b>	<b>Kana</b>	<b>Kanji</b>	<b>English</b>
koppu	コップ	コップ	cup; glass
supu-n	スプーン	スプーン	spoon
fo-ku	フォーク	フォーク	fork
(お) sa ra	(お)さら	(お)皿	plate
(お) chawan	(お)ちゃわん	(お)茶わん	bowl
(お) ha shi	(お)はし	(お)箸	chopsticks
re i zo u co	れいぞうこ	冷蔵庫	refrigerator
to ke i	とけい	時計	clock
tere bi	テレビ	テレビ	television
zubon	ズボン	ズボン	pants
くつ	くつ	靴	shoe
し nbun	しんぶん	新聞	newspaper



コップ

スプーンと  
フォーク

ズボン

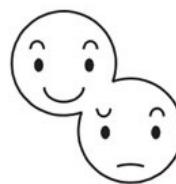
Lesson

**5**

Level ①

**Likes and Dislikes**

Making nouns negative

**5 About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read たちつてと, だぢづでど.
2. Understand how to use the question word **nani** い **ro** and the particle **と**.
3. Review vocabulary group F.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn how to say you like or dislike something.
2. Learn how to use **jana** い.

**From The Teachers**

1. Know すき, き **ra** い and **jana** い like the back of your hand since they are used so much in daily conversation.

**5 New Words あたらしい ことば**

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
すき	すき	好き	like
き <b>ra</b> い	きらい	嫌い	dislike, hate
だいすき	だいすき	大好き	really like, like a lot
だいき <b>ra</b> い	だいきらい	大嫌い	really dislike, really hate
さとこ	さとこ	聰子	a girl's first name
Yoしお	よしお	良夫	a boy's first name
かい mono	かいもの	買い物	shopping
かんこう	かんこう	観光	sightseeing
りょこう	りょこう	旅行	travel
しゅくだい	しゅくだい	宿題	homework

しごと	しごと	仕事	work
さか na	さかな	魚	fish
chikin	チキン	チキン	chicken
nihon ご	にほんご	日本語	Japanese language
ja あ	じゃあ	じゃあ	well then...

## 5 New Adjectives あたらしい けいようし

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
おいしい	おいしい	美味しい	tastes good, delicious
おいしくな い	おいしくない	美味しいくない	doesn't taste good

## 5 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ The particle が with すき and きり

To say you like or dislike something with すき (like) and きり (dislike), the subject particle が is used after the thing that is liked or disliked.

[noun] が すき / きらいです。  
like / dislike a [noun]

#### Examples

1. Wa たし wa いちごが すきです。 I like strawberries.
2. Wa たし wa うさぎが すきです。 I like rabbits.
3. Wa たし wa すいかが きりです。 I dislike watermelons.
4. Wa たし wa いぬが きりです。 I dislike dogs.
5. Wa たし wa chikin が だいすきです。 I really like chicken.
6. Wa たし wa さか na が だいすきです。 I really like fish.
7. Wa たし wa retasu が だいきりです。 I hate lettuce.
8. Wa たし wa かい mono が だいきりです。 I hate shopping.

## □ Using **jana い** to make things negative

**Jana い** means “not” or “don’t” depending on the context of the sentence. **Jana い** is the informal version of **ja あ rima セ n**、**de wa あ rima セ n**、or **で wa na い** however the informal version is most commonly used in everyday conversation. **Jana い** on its own is informal, but can be made polite by adding **です**. It must always follow the word it is modifying.

[word] **jana い**です。

It's not a [word].

### Examples

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. あか <u>jana い</u> です。        | It's <u>not</u> red.         |
| 2. Wa たし <u>jana い</u> です。     | It's <u>not</u> me.          |
| 3. た na かさ n <u>jana い</u> です。 | It is <u>not</u> Mr. Tanaka. |
| 4. そ re <u>jana い</u> です。      | It's <u>not</u> that one.    |
| 5. すき <u>jana い</u> です。        | I <u>don't</u> like it.      |
| 6. き ra い <u>jana い</u> です。    | I <u>don't</u> dislike it.   |

## □ The "one" pronoun

When the particle **no** comes after the noun version of a color or after an adjective, it transforms the word into what is called the “one” pronoun.

### Examples

- |                      |                                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. あか no             | (a / the) red one               |
| 2. cha i ro no       | (a / the) brown one             |
| 3. おいしこ no           | (a / the) good tasting one      |
| 4. nihon no          | (a / the) Japanese one          |
| 5. mura さきと きい ro no | (a / the) purple and yellow one |

### Example Q&A

1. ど re が すきですか。  
あか no が すきです。

Which one do you like?

I like the red one.

おいしこ no が すきです。

I like the delicious one.

2. あ na た no ne こ wa ど re ですか。  
cha i ro no です。  
< ro と orenji no です。

Which one is your cat?

It's the brown one.

It's the black and orange one.

## □ Using *ja あ* to say “Well then...”

*Ja あ* is a very well used word in Japanese. It's said at the beginning of a sentence, normally when asking a follow-up question.

### Example Conversation

- |                                                                |                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. A: Ne こが すきですか。                                             | Do you like cats?                  |
| B: いいえ、だいき <i>ra i</i> です。                                     | No I hate them!                    |
| A: <i>Ja あ</i> 、い <i>nu</i> が すき ですか。                          | Well then, do you like dogs?       |
| B: はい、だいすき です。                                                 | Yes, I love (like a lot) them!     |
| 2. A: あ <i>re</i> が あ <i>na</i> た <i>no</i> < <i>ruma</i> ですか。 | Is that your car?                  |
| B: いいえ、ちがい <i>ma</i> す。                                        | No, it's not.                      |
| A: <i>Ja あ</i> 、ど <i>re</i> ですか。                               | Well then, which one is it?        |
| B: あ <i>re</i> です。                                             | It's that one.                     |
| 3. A: あかが すきですか。                                               | Do you like red?                   |
| B: いいえ、あかが き <i>ra i</i> です。                                   | No I dislike red.                  |
| A: <i>Ja あ</i> 、 <i>nani</i> い <i>ro</i> が すきですか。              | Well then, what color do you like? |
| B: Mi ど <i>ri</i> と <i>mura</i> さきが すきです。                      | I like green and purple.           |

## 5 Speaking Naturally しぜんにはなすこと

### □ Using *き ra i* versus *すき jana i*

When speaking in Japanese, you should be careful when using *き ra i* and *だいき ra i*. In Japanese culture these words sound a bit harsh. If you don't like something, then you should use *すき jana i* instead of *き ra i* in everyday conversations.

## 5 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

### 1. Do you like it?

Yes, I like it.

No, I don't like it.

Yes, I really like it.

すきですか。

Ha i、すきです。

いいえ、すき *jana i* です。

Ha i、だいすきです。

## 2. Do you dislike it?

Yes, I dislike it.

No, I don't dislike it.

No, I like it.

き ra い ですか。

Ha い、き ra い です。

いいえ、き ra い jana い です。

いいえ、すき です。

## 3. What do you like?

I like shopping.

I like travel.

I like Japanese (language).

Nani が すき ですか。

かい mono が すき です。

Ryo こうが すき です。

Nihon gōga すき です。

## 4. What do you dislike?

I dislike homework.

I dislike work.

I dislike fish.

Nani が き ra い ですか。

Shu くだいが き ra い です。

しごとが き ra い です。

さか na が き ra い です。

## 5. Which one do you like? (two items)

I like the red one.

I like the green one.

I like this one.

どっちが すき ですか。

あかのが すき です。

Mi ど ri no が すき です。

こっちが すき です。

## 5 Q&amp;A しつもんと こたえ J→E

## 1. さか na が すき ですか。

Ha い、さか na が すき です。

いいえ、さか na が き ra い です。

Ha い、さか na が だいすき です。

いいえ、すき jana い です。

いいえ、おいしく na い です。

## Do you like fish?

Yes, I like fish.

No, I dislike fish.

Yes, I really like fish.

No, I don't like it.

No, it doesn't taste good.

## 2. Wa たし no &lt; ruma が すき ですか。

Ha い だいすき です。

いいえ、だいき ra い です。

## Do you like my car?

Yes, I like it a lot.

No, I hate it.

## 3. Banana が き ra い ですか。

Ha い、き ra い です。

いいえ、banana が すき です。

Banana が き ra い jana い です。

## Do you dislike bananas?

Yes, I dislike them.

No, I like bananas.

I don't dislike bananas.

## 4. Mi ずが すきですか。

Ha い そ う で す。

い い え、す き jana い で す。

## Do you like water?

Yes, I do.

No, I don't like it.

## 5. Nani が き ra い で す か。

Cha い ro い banana が だ い き ra い で す。

かい mono が き ra い で す。

## What do you dislike?

I really hate brown bananas.

I hate shopping.

## 5 Reading Comprehension どっかい

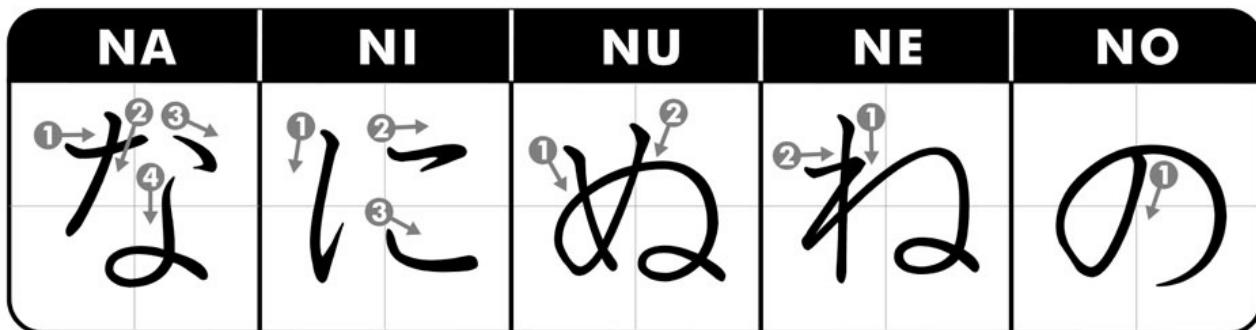
Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

- ① さとこさ n no か re no nama え wa た na か yo し お で す。
- ② さとこさ n wa 25 さい で す。
- ③ Yo し お さ n wa 27 さい で す。
- ④ さとこさ n wa かい mono が だ い す き で す。
- ⑤ Yo し お さ n wa かい mono が す き jana い で す。
- ⑥ Yo し お さ n wa し ご と が す き で す。
- ⑦ さとこさ n wa し ご と が き ra い で す。
- ⑧ さとこさ n と yo し お さ n wa ryo こ う が だ い す き で す。

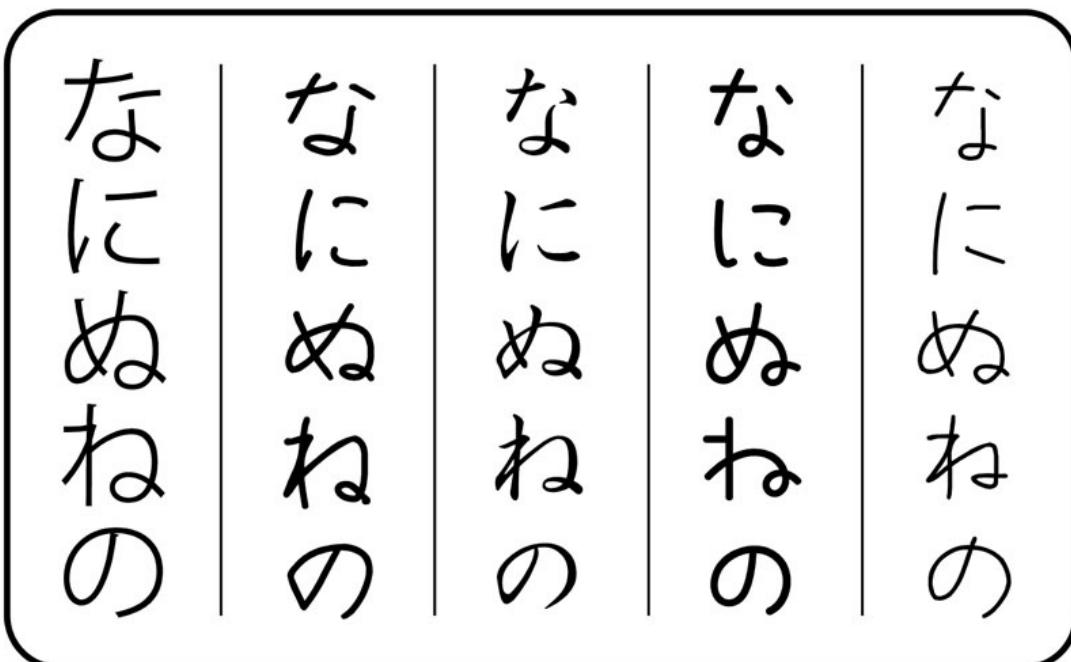


**Hiragana なにぬねの****な New Hiragana あたらしいひらがな**

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing fast.

**な Various Styles スタイル**

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.



## な Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

na	な	な						
ni	に	に						
nu	ぬ	ぬ						
ne	ね	ね						
no	の	の						

## な Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1.   つ (summer)  
na

2.   hon (Japan)  
ni

3.   こ (cat)  
ne

4. yo  か (middle of the night)  
na

5.   mu (to drink)  
no

6.   ru (to sleep, to go to bed)  
ne

7.     ni (what?)  
na ni

8.   いぐるみ (stuffed animal)  
nu

9. ni がい (bitter tasting)

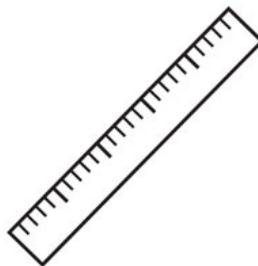
10. ne えさ n (older sister)

11. nu く (to take off clothes)

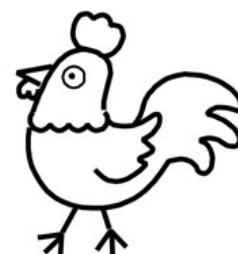
12. no る (to ride)

**な****Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうのことば**

いぬ  
dog



ながい  
long



にわとり  
chicken



のる  
to ride



ぬる  
to paint



ねこ  
cat

**な****Words You Can Write かけることば**

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

なに  
(what)

<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

ねこ  
(cat)

<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

なな  
(seven)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

にし  
(west)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

なつ  
(summer)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

あなた  
(you)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

ねつ  
(fever)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

いぬ  
(dog)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

のど  
(throat)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

かに  
(crab)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

につき  
(diary)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

にく  
(meat)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

にじ  
(rainbow)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

## な Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

- |     |      |
|-----|------|
| な · | • no |
| の · | • ni |
| か · | • ta |
| す · | • na |
| ぬ · | • ka |
| ね · | • nu |
| に · | • ne |
| た · | • su |

## 5 Lesson Activities

### □ Question and answer 1

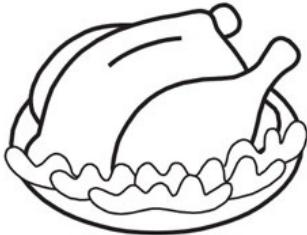
Answer the following questions by looking at the pictures. Use ~ja ない です when answering the following questions:

1a. こ re wa さかな ですか?

---

1b. Ja あ ("Well then"), な n ですか?

---



2a. こ re wa hon ですか?

---

2b. Ja あ、 な n ですか?

---



3a. こ re wa (お) chawan と supu-n ですか?

---

3b. Ja あ、 な n ですか?

---

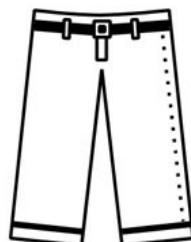


4a. こ re wa くつ ですか?

---

4b. Ja あ、 な n ですか?

---



## □ Question and answer 2

Pick one of the pictures and say, [item] が すきですか or [item] が き ra いです.

ど re が すきですか / き ra いですか?



きい ro い とけい



く ro い とけい



mi ど ri の とけい

ど re が すきですか / き ra いですか?



しごと



shu くだい



かい mo の

## □ Question and answer 3

Answer the following questions as though they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you know when writing your answer.

1. Ryo こう が すきですか。

---

2. ねこが き ra いですか。

---

3. ya さいが すきですか。

---

4. に hon ご が すきですか。

---

5. (お)すし wa おいしいですか。

---

#### □ Japanese translation

Translate the following example into English.

1. Yo shioza n wa < ruma ga dai suki desu.
2. Yo shioza n no < ruma wa aca to shi ro desu.
3. ka re no shi ro i < ruma wa hon da desu.
4. aca no wa Toyota desu.
5. Yo shioza n no otozsa n wa < ruma ga dai suki desu.
6. otozsa n no < ruma wa ki n i ro no < ruma to ki i ro i < ruma desu.
7. oka aza n wa ki i ro i < ruma ga suki ja nai desu.

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

## □ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. さとこさ *n* の カ *re wa*、だ *re* ですか。

---

2. ヨしおさ *n wa* しごとがき *ra* いですか。

---

3. さとこさ *n wa* な *n* さいですか。

---

4. だ *re* が かい *mo* の ガ すきですか。

---

5. だ *re* が、ryo こうが すきですか。

---

## □ Short dialogue

Ms. Mori and Ms. Nishida are talking about movies.

**Mori さ n:** にしださ n wa えいがが すきですか。

**にしださ n:** Ha い、だいすきです。

**Mori さ n:** Wa たし mo です。

Ha い yu う wa だ re ガ すきですか。

**にしださ n:** Harison Fo-do ガ すきです。

**Mori さ n:** そ うですか。

Wa たし wa Buraddo Pitto ガ すきです。

**にしださ n:** Wa たし mo Buraddo Pitto mo すきです。



### New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
えいが	えいが	映画	movie
はい yu う	はいゆう	俳優	actor
Harison Fo-do	ハリソン・フォード	ハリソン・フォード	Harrison Ford (actor)
Buraddo Pitto	ブラッド・ピット	ブラッド・ピット	Brad Pitt (actor)

## □ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Talk about your most/least favorite movie(s).
3. Talk about your most/least favorite actor(s).

## More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana, but you will also learn new words.

ぬぐ	to undress	かね	steel
にっき	diary	にく	meat
ねじ	a screw	ねぎ	green onion
ねあげ	a rise in price	なつかしい	dear, longed for

## 5 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

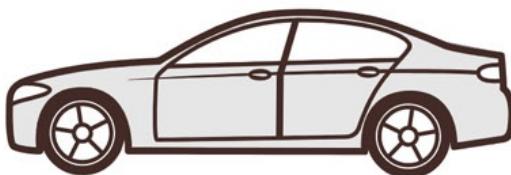
- なにが すきですか。
- しごとが だいすきです。
- さかな to ya さいが すき ja ないです。
- Wa たしの < ruma wa mura さき ja ないです。
- あなたの と mo だちの < ruma wa あお ja ないですか。

## 5 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

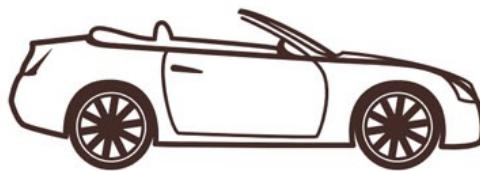
In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あなたの おかあさ n wa なにい ro のく ruma が すきですか。

What color car does your mother like?



あか



しろ

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 2: こ re wa な n ですか。

What is this?

Lesson 3: こ re wa あなたの おかあさ n の < ruma ですか。

Is this your mother's car?

Lesson 4: あなたの おかあさ n の < ruma wa し ro いですか。

Is your mother's car white?

## Vocabulary Groups

### G sports and entertainment

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
basuketto booru	バスケットボール	バスケットボール	basketball
gyanburu	ギャンブル	ギャンブル	gambling
sakka-	サッカー	サッカー	soccer

### H fruit

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
いちご	いちご	苺	strawberry
mi ka n / orenji	みかん / オレンジ	みかん / オレンジ	orange
rin gō	りんご	りんご	apple
banana	バナナ	バナナ	banana
すいか	すいか	西瓜	watermelon
remon	レモン	レモン	lemon
momo	もも	桃	peach
bu dōう	ぶどう	ぶどう	grapes

Lesson

**6**

Level ①

**Wanting and Not Wanting**

Conjugating adjectives

**6 About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read なにぬねの.
2. Understand how to use すき, きらい and ja ない.
3. Review vocabulary group G and H.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn how to say you want or don't want something.
2. Learn how to conjugate adjectives into the negative form.

**From The Teachers**

1. Don't confuse the usage of ja ない, and くない. Remember that ja ない is used with nouns and くない is used with い adjectives.

**6 New Words あたらしい ことば**

<b>Progressive</b>	<b>Kana</b>	<b>Kanji</b>	<b>English</b>
ho しい	ほしい	欲しい	want
doru	ドル	ドル	dollars
えん	えん	円	yen
inta-netto	インターネット	インターネット	internet
おかね	おかね	お金	money
もちろん	もちろん	もちろん	of course
cola	コーラ	コーラ	cola
みず	みず	水	water
のみもの	のみもの	飲み物	a drink, drinks

## 6 Culture Clip カルチャー クリップ

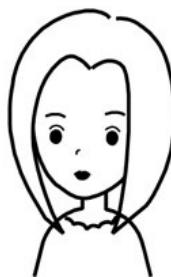
You might see *< n* or *chan* added to the end of last or first names. They are both used to show affection, but are not limited to just that. *Chan* is mostly used after girls' names and *< n* after boys' names. *Chan* is used quite often after children's names, regardless of the sex of the child. It is also not unusual for a higher-up in a company to refer to the female staff members with a *< n* following their names.

### When NOT to use

*Chan* and *< n* should *never* be used when addressing people above you in social status. If you ever hear someone addressing another person with *< n* or *chan*, you can assume that the speaker is equal or higher in status.



kun



chan

## 6 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. けっこうです。

I'm fine. (No thanks)

## 6 New Adjectives あたらしい けいようし

The following adjectives are all *い* adjectives. *い* adjectives always end in *い*. The particle *の* is not necessary to make the word an adjective. Since they are already adjectives, they can simply be placed in front of a word to modify it. They can be considered *true adjectives* because they stand alone as adjectives without any help.

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
あたらしい	あたらしい	新しい	new
furu i	ふるい	古い	old
あつい	あつい	暑い	hot
さむい	さむい	寒い	cold

つ me たい	つめたい	冷たい	cold to the touch
ぬ ru い	ぬるい	温い	warm, luke warm

## 6 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ Making adjectives negative

In the prior lesson you learned how to make nouns negative by adding ja ない to them. For example, いぬ ja ないです, means “it is not a dog.” To make い adjectives negative, ~ja ない can not be used.

All true adjectives end with an い. To make い adjectives negative, drop the last い then add くない.

(い adjective) minus い, add くない  
It's not (adjective).

#### Examples

- |                                                                            |                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. あた ra しい = new<br>あた ra しくない = <u>not</u> new                           | 2. おいしこ = delicious<br>おいしくない = <u>not</u> delicious |
| 3. さ mu い = cold<br>さ mu くない = <u>not</u> cold                             | 4. あつい = hot<br>あつくない = <u>not</u> hot               |
| 5. つ me たい = cold to the touch<br>つ me たくない = <u>not</u> cold to the touch | 6. furu い = old<br>furu くない = <u>not</u> old         |

### □ The colors as negative adjectives

The same thing can be done with the adjective forms of colors.

#### Examples

- |                                                |                                                |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1. あかい = red<br>あかくない = <u>not</u> red         | 2. あおい = blue<br>あおくない = <u>not</u> blue       |
| 3. ちあいろい = brown<br>ちあいろくない = <u>not</u> brown | 4. きいろい = yellow<br>きいろくない = <u>not</u> yellow |

## □ Wanting and not wanting

The particle ガ is used with *ho shii* (want) in the same way it is used with *suki* and *ki rai*. ガ is used to mark the thing that you want or don't want.

[*thing*] ガ *ho shii* です。

I want [*thing*]

To change “want” into “don’t want,” drop the い then add くない.

[*thing*] ガ *ho shikunai* です。

I don’t want [*thing*]

### Example Sentences

1. あた *ra shii* terebi ガ *ho shii* です。

I want a new television.

2. つ *me tai* の mimo のが *ho shii* です。

I want a cold drink.

3. Furu い < ruma ガ *ho shikunai* です。

I don’t want an old car.

## □ Tricky uses of the particle の

The particle の that we learned in other lessons is used to show possession (as in the sentence *wa tashi no < ruma desu* – “it is my car”). More importantly, we learned that の can be used to make any noun into an adjective just by coming after the noun, as in *に hon go no hon* (a Japanese language book).

The usage described above is simple, but sometimes when you have a string of words separated by の it can be tricky. Look at the following sentence:

1. Wa tashi no と mo dachi no akiko n *wa ni ju ugozai* です。  
My friend Akiko is 25 years old.

This sentence may look confusing, but remember that the key function of の is to make the noun or word it comes after into a modifier (no-adjective). *Wa tashi no* と *mo dachi no* akiko n simply means, “my friend Akiko.” *Wa tashi no* と *mo dachi no* is just modifying akiko n.

## □ Numbers and money

If you want to say 100 dollars or 100 yen, you just add *doru* or *元 n* after the number. The particle の is not required.

### Examples

1. 100 yen.

Hya く元 n.

2. 1000 dollars.

せ n doru.

## 6 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

### 1. なにが ho しいですか。

あた ra しい く ruma が ho しい です。  
いち man doru が ho しい です。  
かの jo が ho しい です。  
つ me たい ko-ra が ho しい です。

### What do you want?

I want a new car.  
I want 10,000 dollars.  
I want a girlfriend.  
I want a cold cola.

### 2. ど re が ho しい ですか。

こ re と こ re が ho しい です。  
あかの が ho しい です。  
Mi ど ri と あおの が ho しい です。

### Which one do you want?

I want this one and this one.  
I want the red one.  
I want the green and blue one.

### 3. あなたの く ruma wa あた ra しい ですか。

いいえ、furu い です。  
いいえ、あた ra し く ない です。

### Is your car new?

No, it's old.  
No, it's not new.

### 4. Konpyu-ta- が ho しい ですか。

いいえ、ho し く ない です。  
Ha い、ho しい です。

### Do you want a computer?

No, I don't want one.  
Yes, I want one.

## 6 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

### 1. What color car do you want?

I want a silver car.  
I don't want a car.

なに い ro の く ruma が ho しい ですか。

ぎ n い ro の く ruma が ho しい です。  
く ruma が ho し く ない です。

### 2. Don't you want a new refrigerator?

Of course I want one.

あた ra しい re いぞうこが ho し く ない ですか。

Mo ち ron ho しい です。

## 3. Is your drink cold?

No, it's not cold.  
No, it's warm.

あなたの の mimo の wa つ me たい ですか。  
いいえ、つ me たくない です。  
いいえ、ぬ ru い です。

## 4. Do you want a newspaper?

Yes, I want the Asahi Newspaper.

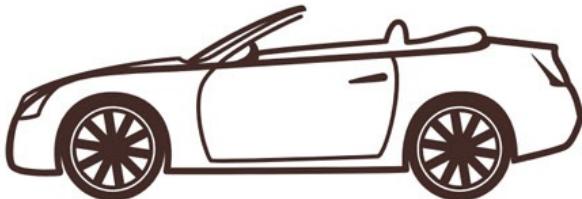
し nbun が ho しい ですか。  
Ha い、あさ hi し nbun が ho しい です。

## 6

## Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

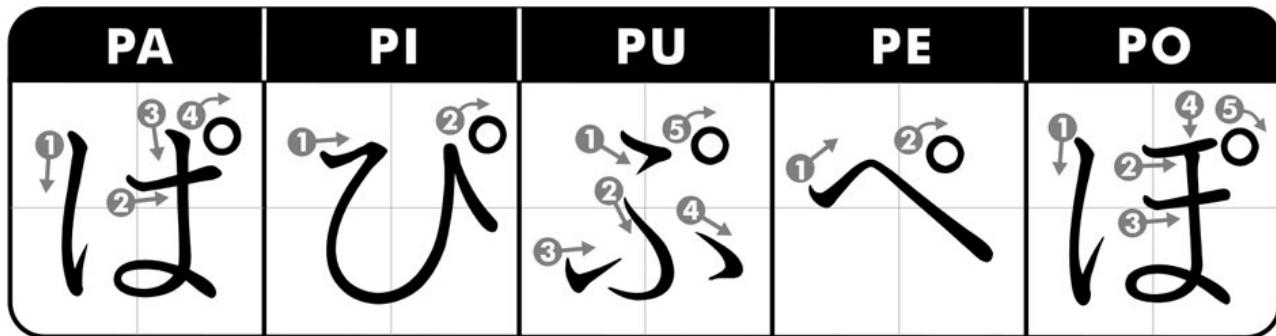
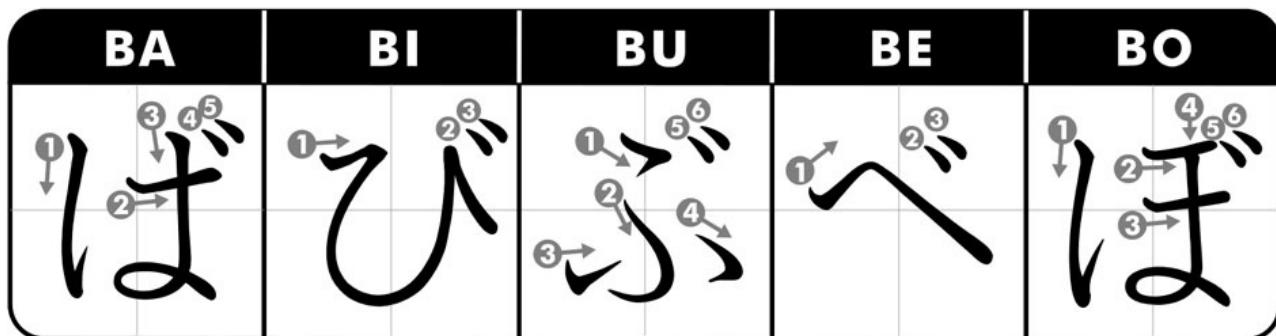
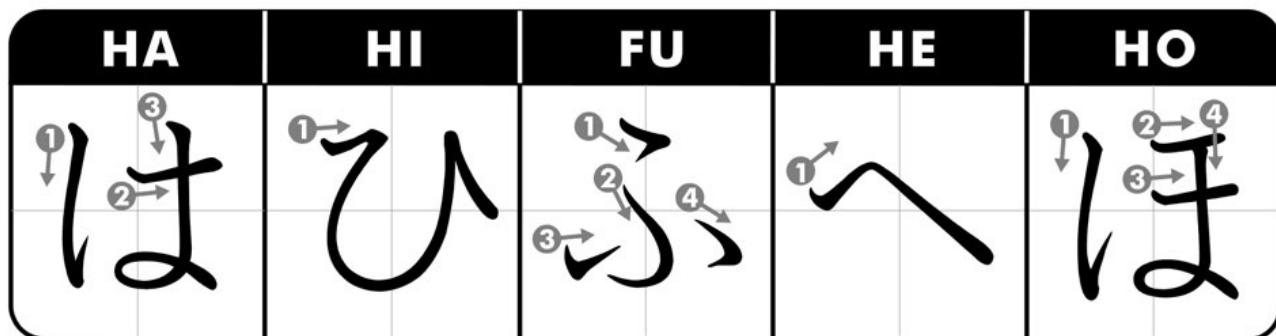
- ① Boくのな maえ wa maつ moとです。
- ② Inta-nettoがすきです。
- ③ Konpyu-ta-がhoしいです。
- ④ Boくのとmoだちのたし roくn wa konpyu-ta-がhoしくないです。
- ⑤ たし roくn waあかいくrumaがhoしいです。
- ⑥ Boくwaあかいくruma waすきjaないです。
- ⑦ し roいくrumaがすきです。



## Hiragana はひふへほ

### は New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.



## は Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.

は	は	は	は	は
ひ	ひ	ひ	ひ	ひ
ふ	ふ	ふ	ふ	ふ
へ	へ	へ	へ	へ
ほ	ほ	ほ	ほ	ほ

ば	ば	ば	ば	ば
び	び	び	び	び
ぶ	ぶ	ぶ	ぶ	ぶ
べ	べ	べ	べ	べ
ぼ	ぼ	ぼ	ぼ	ぼ

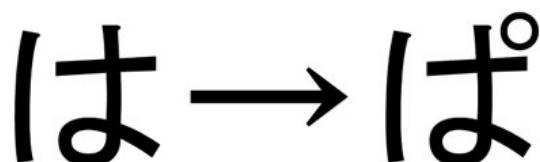
ぱ	ぱ	ぱ	ぱ	ぱ
ひ	ひ	ひ	ひ	ひ
ふ	ふ	ふ	ふ	ふ
ぺ	ぺ	ぺ	ぺ	ぺ
ぼ	ぼ	ぼ	ぼ	ぼ

## は Writing Points かくポイント

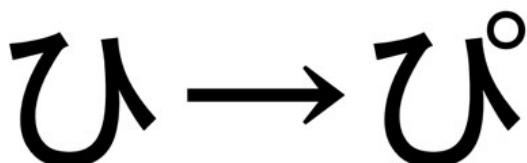
### □ What is that circle?

The *pa pi pu pe po* hiragana are made by adding a circle in the area where *dakuten* normally would go. The circle should be written clockwise and is always the last stroke.

Most Japanese people refer to this as simply *maru*, which means “circle.” The official name for it is *handakuten*.



HA PA



HI PI

### □ Why isn't ふ written as HU?

*Japanese From Zero!* represents ふ as *FU* instead of *HU* in ro-maji. Japanese people will sometimes represent ふ as *HU* in ro-maji, however, the pronunciation of ふ is closer to *FU*. The F sound in ふ should be voiced softer than the F sound in an English word.

### □ The easy way to write ふ (fu)

ふ tends to be difficult to write, but there is an easy way: connect the first and second stroke into what looks like a number “3.”



The 3 Version



Actual Font Versions

**は Writing Practice れんしゅう**

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

ha	は	は						
hi	ひ	ひ						
fu	ふ	ふ						
he	へ	へ						
ho	ほ	ほ						

ba	ば	ば						
bi	び	び						
bu	ぶ	ぶ						
be	べ	べ						
bo	ぼ	ぼ						

pa	ぱ	ぱ						
pi	ぴ	ぴ						
pu	ふ	ふ						
pe	ペ	ペ						
po	ほ	ほ						

## は Special Usage とくべつな つかいかた

### □ The topic marker は (wa)

A topic marker in Japanese identifies the subject of a sentence. The topic marker "wa" is written using the は (ha) character and can never be written using the わ (wa) character. In all other situations, は (ha) is always read as "ha."

#### Example Sentences

1. あなたは (wa) だ re ですか。
2. Banana は (wa) きい ro です。

Who are you?  
Bananas are yellow.

### □ The direction marker へ (e)

The direction marker "e" is written using the へ (he) character and can never be written using the え (e) character. In all other situations, へ (he) is always read as "he."

**NOTE:** This grammar point is covered in Lesson 12.

#### Example Sentences

1. がっこうへ (e) いき ma す。
2. とう kyo うへ (e) いき ma す。

I am going towards (to) school.  
I am going towards (to) Tokyo.

## は Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. haru (spring)

2. hiru ごhan (lunch)

3. fuyu (winter)

4. hei wa (peace)

5. hoku (picture book)

6. banru (to do your best)

7. hanabi (fireworks)

8. bumiくro (paper bag)

9. hiとmebore (love at first sight)

10. beraru (to compare)

11. hibaな (electric spark)

12. piku (pencil)

## は Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

はし

(chopsticks)


へそ

(belly button)


はと

(pigeon; dove)


ぶた  
(pig)


ひと  
(people)


しっぽ  
(tail)


とうふ  
(tofu)


はっぱ  
(leaf)


ほっぺ  
(cheeks)


ぼうし  
(hat)


きつぶ  
(ticket)


はなび  
(fireworks)


## は Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうのことば



ひ sho  
secretary



ふくろう  
owl



おばけ  
monster



ほうたい  
bandage



はし ru  
to run



てっぽう  
pistol, gun

**は**

## Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

ふ	・	• pi
ペ	・	• pe
ぜ	・	• bo
ぼ	・	• gi
は	・	• fu
た	・	• ze
ぴ	・	• ta
ぎ	・	• ha

## 6 Lesson Activities

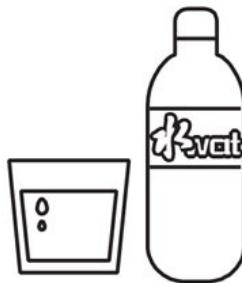
### □ Question and answer 1

Pick one of the pictures and say ~が ほしいです / ほしくないです.

ど re ガ ほしいですか / ほしくないですか。



ju-su



mi ず



ko-ra

ど re ガ ほしいですか / ほしくないですか。



う ma



ねこ



いぬ

### □ Question and answer 2

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. なにい ro のく ruma が すきですか。

---

2. には n の ざっしが ほしいですか。

3. つ me たい ko-ra が ほしいですか。

4. あなたの terebi は、あた ra しいですか。

#### □ Question and answer 3

Using \_\_\_\_\_ が ほしいです, make a conversation for the following pictures:

What are Ichiro and Yumiko saying in this picture?

Ichiro: \_\_\_\_\_



Yumiko: \_\_\_\_\_

What are the nurse and the patient saying in this picture?

Nurse: \_\_\_\_\_



Patient: \_\_\_\_\_

## □ English translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

1.

**George さ n:** What is your name?

**Yu か ri さ n:** It is Yukari. What is yours?

**George さ n:** My name is George. I am 34 years old. How old are you?

**Yu か ri さ n:** I am 26 years old.

George さ n:

Yu か ri さ n:

George さ n:

Yu か ri さ n:

## □ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. Ma つ mo とく n は、なにが すきですか。

---

2. Ma つ mo とく n の と mo だちの な ma えは、な n ですか。

---

3. たし ro く n は、なにが ほしいですか。

---

4. Ma つ mo とく n は、あかいく ruma が すきですか。

---

5. Ma つ mo とく n は、なにい ro の く ruma が すきですか。

---

## □ Short dialogue

Mr. Yoshida is welcoming Karen to his house.

Yo しだ さ n: Karen さ n、どうぞ。

Karen: はい、お jama し ma す。

Yo しだ さ n: の mimo のは なにが ほしいですか。

Karen: そうですね...。Ko-ra が ほしいです。

Yo しだ さ n: Cho っと ma ってください。

はい、どうぞ。 (serving a bottle of cola)

Karen: あ ri がとうござい ma す。



### New words and expressions in the dialogue

#### Progressive

どうぞ。

お jama し ma す。

(literally, "I will bother you," when entering someone's house)

#### Kanji

どうぞ。

お邪魔します。

#### English

Please come in.

I will come in.

そうですね...

Cho っと ma ってください。 ちょっと待って下さい。

(はい) どうぞ。

(when serving/giving something to someone)

Let's see...

Please wait a moment.

Here you are.

## □ Short dialogue activities

Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.

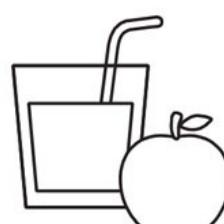
Suppose someone is visiting your house. Ask him/her what he/she wants to have for a drink.



orenji ju-su?



mi ず?



rin ご ju-su?

## □ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana, but you will also learn new words.

しばふ	grass	ふうふ	married couple
はこぶ	to move an item	へいたい	soldier
すなば	sand box	こうべ	Kobe (city)
ばくはつ	explosion	ぴかぴか	shiny
てっぽう	gun		

## 6 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, then we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. なにが ほしい ですか。
2. つめたい mi ずが ほしい です。
3. あかくない rin ご wa すき ja ないです。

## 6 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あなたの おかあさ n は なにい ro の < ruma が ほしいですか。

What color car does your mother want?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 3: こ re は あなたの おかあさ n の < ruma ですか。  
Is this your mother's car?

Lesson 4: あなたの おかあさ n の < ruma は し ro いですか。  
Is your mother's car white?

Lesson 5: あなたの おかあさ n は なにい ro の < ruma が すき ですか。  
What color car does your mother like?

**Vocabulary Groups****I transportation**

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
< ruma	くるま	車	car
ひこうき	ひこうき	飛行機	airplane
で nsha	でんしゃ	電車	train
basu	バス	バス	bus
ふね	ふね	船	ship; boat
さ nrinsha	さんりんしゃ	三輪車	tricycle
sho うぼう sha	しょうぼうしゃ	消防車	fire truck
じて nsha	じてんしゃ	自転車	bicycle
し nか nせ n	しんかんせん	新幹線	bullet train
patoka-	パトカー	パトカー	patrol car



バス



じてんしゃ



ひこうき

Lesson

**7**

Level ①

**Locations**

Where is it?

**7****About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read はひふへほ, ばびぶべぼ, ぱぴぶぺぼ.
2. Understand how make a noun into a modifying word using the particle の.
3. Review vocabulary group I.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn how to say where an item is.
2. Learn when to use は (wa) or が (ga).

**From The Teachers**

1. The こそあど diagram in Lesson 2 for will be helpful in understanding the distance relationships for ここ, そこ, and あそこ words in the どこ word group in this lesson.

**7****New Words あたらしい ことば**

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
どこ	どこ	どこ	where? what place?
ここ	ここ	ここ	here, this place
そこ	そこ	そこ	there, that place
あそこ	あそこ	あそこ	over there, that place over there
そと	そと	外	outside
なか	なか	中	inside
resutoran	レストラン	レストラン	restaurant
にほん	にほん	日本	Japan
amerika	アメリカ	アメリカ	America
でも	でも	でも	but

## 7 New Adjectives あたらしい けいようし

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
いい、yo い	いい、よい	いい、良い	nice, good
おおきい	おおきい	大きい	big
ちいさい	ちいさい	小さい	small

## 7 Word Usage ことばの つかいかた

### □ Yo くない vs いくない

In Lesson 6 you learned how to make any adjective negative by dropping the い and adding くない.

#### Examples

1. おおきい = big  
おおきくない = not big

2. ちいさい = small  
ちいさくない = not small

いい is an exception to the normal pattern. Both いい and yo い mean "nice, good". And even though you will sometimes hear people say いくない to mean "not good" in a casual conversation, it is not commonly used and generally not considered standard Japanese. Instead, yo くない should be used to say "not good".

## 7 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. おなかが すいています。 I'm hungry.  
This literally means "My stomach is empty."
2. おなかが いっぱいです。 I'm full.  
This literally means "My stomach is full."
3. のどが かわいてい ma す。 I'm thirsty.  
This literally means "My throat is dry."

## 7 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ Using で mo

で mo is used to connect two complete sentences together. The second sentence begins with で mo.

(Sentence 1). で mo, (Sentence 2).  
 (Sentence 1). But (Sentence 2).

#### Example sentences

1. Furu-tsū は おいしいです。で mo、おなかが いっぱいです。  
 Fruits are delicious. But I am full.
2. のどが か wa いています。で mo、ko-ra は つ me たくない です。  
 I'm thirsty. But the cola isn't cold.
3. Wa たしの konpyu-ta- は ふ ru い です。で mo、あた ra しい の は ほしくない です。  
 My computer is old. But I don't want a new one.

### □ The rules for using は (wa) and が (ga)

In this lesson we will discuss some differences between は (wa) and が. This topic tends to stress out new students of Japanese, but there is nothing to worry about if you learn these simple rules!

#### #1. You can NEVER use は (wa) directly after a question word.

This is a simple rule with no exceptions.

##### INCORRECT

1. なには すきですか。
2. ど re は いぬですか。
3. なにい ro は すき ですか。

##### CORRECT

1. なにが すきですか。
2. ど re が いぬですか。
3. なにい ro が すき ですか。

## #2. は (wa) is used for comparison and emphasis.

Generally speaking, adjectives such as ほしい、すき、and きらい use が to mark the item being discussed. However, when comparing items or emphasizing, は is used instead of が.

### Examples (emphasis)

- すいかは おいしいです。

Watermelons are delicious. (You are emphasizing how tasty watermelons are.)

- Totoro (anime character)は 大きいです！

Totoro is big!

### Examples (comparison)

- Mo うふが ほしいです。で mo、ma < ra は ほしくないです。

I want a blanket. But I don't want a pillow.

- Rin ごが すきです。で mo、banana は きらいです。

I like apples. But I dislike bananas.

- ねこが ほしくないです。で mo、いぬは ほしいです。

I don't want a cat. But I want a dog.

## #3. は (wa) and が can both be in the same sentence.

When は (wa) and が are in the same sentence, は marks the topic and が marks the object.

### Examples

- Wa たしは ねこが すきです。

I like cats.

- Yo しおさな は banana が ほしいです。

Yoshio wants a banana.

#### #4. は (wa) should be used with new topics and conversations.

Even though your sentence will still be understood if you mix up は (wa) and が, you should always use は when introducing new topics of discussion.

As discussed in Lesson 2, after the topic is introduced, it can be dropped from the rest of the conversation. But if the topic needs to be restated OR you change topics, don't forget that は (wa) should be used.

#### #5. は (wa) and が are often dropped in casual conversations.

Until your Japanese is really good, we don't recommend that you drop any particles, but from time to time you will hear casual Japanese conversations where は (wa) or が have been dropped.

##### WITH THE PARTICLE

1. ねこが 好きです。

I like cats.

2. おかあさ n は な n さい ですか。

How old is your mother?

##### WITHOUT THE PARTICLE

ねこ 好きです。

I like cats.

おかあさ n なんさい ですか。

How old is your mother?

## 7

## Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

### 1. Where is it?

It's here.

It's there.

It's outside.

It's inside.

どこ ですか。

ここ です。

そこ です。

そと です。

なか です。

### 2. Is it here?

Yes, it's here.

No, it's not here.

No, it's over there.

ここ ですか。

はい、 ここ です。

いいえ、 ここ ja ない です。

いいえ、 あそこ です。

## 3. Is it over there?

Yes, it's here.  
No, it's there.  
No, it's not over there.

あそこですか。

はい、ここです。  
いいえ、そこです。  
いいえ、あそこ ja ないです。

## 4. Where is the dog?

The dog is over there.  
The dog is outside.  
The dog isn't inside.

いぬは どこですか。

いぬは あそこです。  
いぬは そとです。  
いぬは なか ja ないです。

## 7

## Q&amp;A しつもんと こたえ J→E

## 1. いいですか

はい、いいです。  
いいえ、yo くないです。

Is it good?

Yes, it's good.  
No, it's not good.

## 2. どこが いいですか。

ここが いいです。  
そこが いいです。

What place is good?

This place is good.  
That place is good.

## 3. おいしい resotoran は どこですか。

ご men なさい、わか rima せ n.  
おいしい resotoran は あそこです。  
あそこが いいです。

Where is a good (-tasting) restaurant?

I'm sorry, I don't know.  
A good restaurant is over there.  
That place over there is good.

## 4. にほ n の &lt; ruma が ほしい ですか。

はい、にほ n の < ruma が だいすき です。  
いいえ、ほしくない です。

Do you want a Japanese car?

Yes, I really like Japanese cars.  
No, I don't want one.

## 7

## Mini Conversation ミニかいわ J→E

## 1. Conversation between friends.

A: おなかが すいてい ma す。  
B: Piza が ほしい ですか。  
A: いいえ、すしが ほしい です。

A: I'm hungry!  
B: Do you want pizza?  
A: No, I want sushi.

## 2. Conversation at school between friends.

A: たなかせ n せいが すき ですか。  
B: だいすきです。あなたは？  
A: すき ja ないです。  
B: Ja あ、だ re が すき ですか。  
A: こば ya しけ n せいが すき です。

A: Do you like Mrs. Tanaka?  
B: I love her! What about you?  
A: I don't like (her).  
B: Well then, who do you like?  
A: I like Mr. Kobayashi.

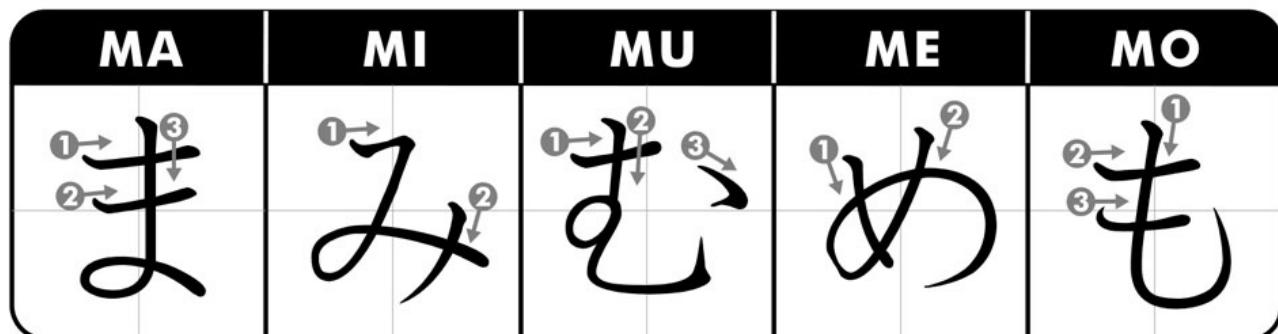
## 3. Conversation between friends.

A: あなたの < ruma は おおきいですか。  
B: いいえ、ちいさいです。で mo、おとうさ n の < ruma は おおきいです。  
A: なにい ro ですか。  
B: し ro です。

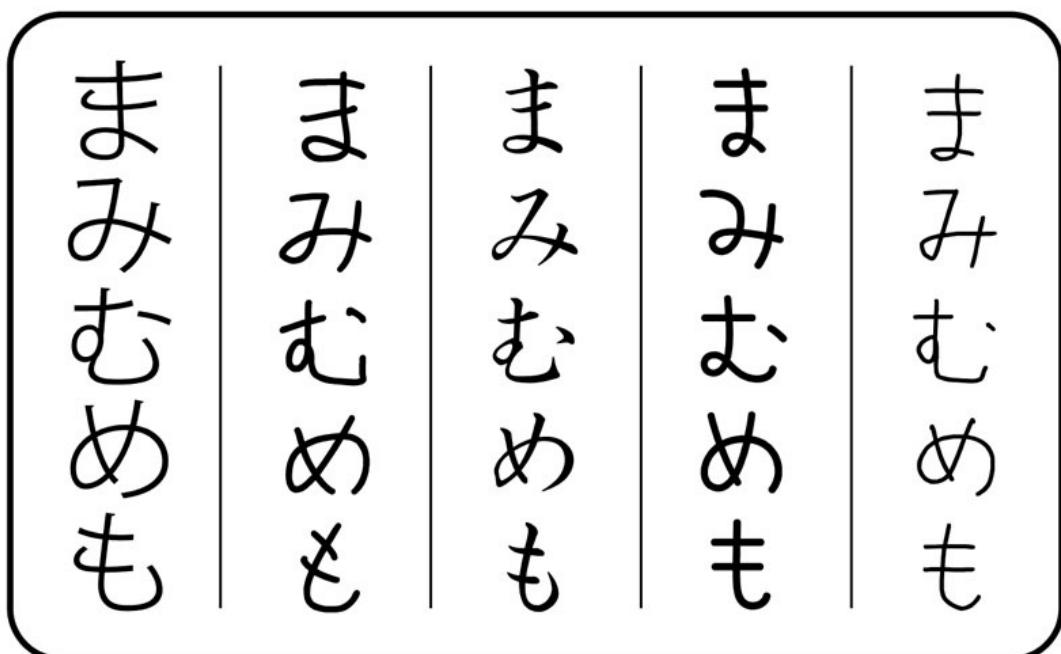
A: Is your car big?  
B: No, it's small. But my father's car is big.  
A: What color is it?  
B: It's white.

**Hiragana まみむめも****ま New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな**

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing quickly.

**ま Various Styles スタイル**

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.



## ま Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

ma	ま	ま						
mi	み	み						
mu	む	む						
me	め	め						
mo	も	も						

## ま Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1.       ri (forest)  
mo

2.              じ (maple leaf)  
mo mi

3.       ri (impossible)  
mu

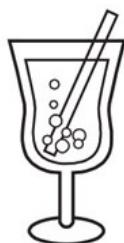
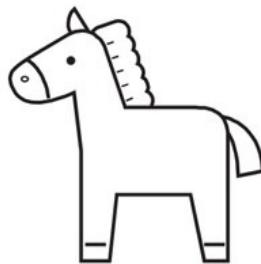
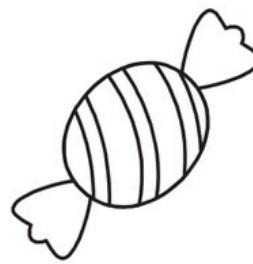
4.       だつ (to stand out)  
me

5.       ru (to see, to watch)  
mi

6.       がね (eye glasses)  
me

7. たべ      の (food)  
mo

8.              ru (to protect)  
ma mo

9. の mi mo の (a drink)10. mu しあつい (humid)11. ma ほう (magic)12. mi mi ず (earthworm)**ま****Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうの ことば**yo む  
to readのみもの  
a drinkしつも n  
questionなみだ  
tearsうま  
horseあめ  
candy**ま****Words You Can Write かける ことば**

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

まど  
(window)

<input type="text"/>				
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

もも  
(peach)

<input type="text"/>				
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------

むし  
(insect)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

かみ  
(paper; hair)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

だめ  
(no good)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

みせ  
(store)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

あたま  
(head)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

まじめ  
(serious)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

さしみ  
(sashimi)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

むすこ  
(son)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

むすめ  
(daughter)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

ものさし  
(ruler)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

みじかい  
(short)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

**ま****Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング**

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

- |   |   |      |
|---|---|------|
| に | ・ | • mu |
| む | ・ | • mi |
| も | ・ | • nu |
| ぬ | ・ | • ni |
| み | ・ | • o  |
| ま | ・ | • mo |
| お | ・ | • me |
| め | ・ | • ma |

## 7 Lesson Activities

### □ Sentence creation

Create a sentence about the pictures using でも. Pay attention to the use of the particles は and が.

#### Example

like→

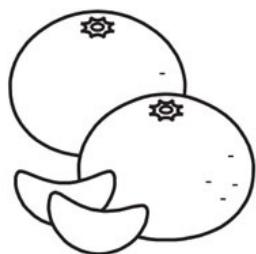


BUT dislike→



ex. Chikin が すきです。でも、さかなは きらいです。

like→



BUT don't like→

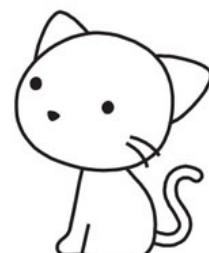


1.

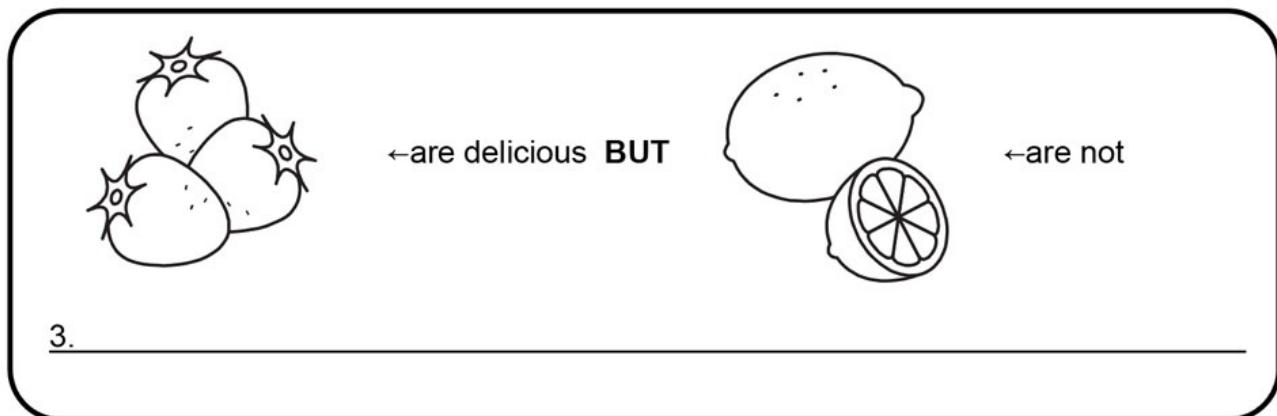
want→



BUT don't want→



2.



### □ What would you say?

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. おいしい resutoran は どこですか。

---

2. あなたの いえは、どこですか。

---

3. にほ n の < ru まが ほしいですか。

---

4. みど ri の rin ごが すきですか。

---

5. あなたの terebi は あた ra しいですか。

---

6. あなたの じて nsha は、なにい ro ですか。

---

7. つめたいみずが ほしいですか。

---

## □ Short dialogue 1

Mr. Tanaka is driving Mike (Maiku) home and asking which house is Mike's house.

たなかさ n: Maiku さ n のうちは ①あそこですか。

Maiku: いいえ、ちがいます。②そこです。

たなかさ n: えっ、どこですか。Wa か ri ません。  
③みどりの うちですか。



Maiku: いいえ、③みどりの うちは、ともだちの うちです。  
④きい ro い うちが wa たしのです。

たなかさ n: ああ、wa か ri ました。

### New words and expressions in the dialogue

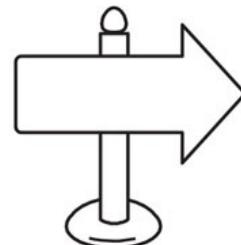
Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
うち	うち	家	house
えっ	えっ	えっ	Eh?
ああ、wa か ri ました。 ああ、わかりました。 ああ、分かりました。			Oh, I see / I got it.

## □ Short dialogue 1 activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Substitute the words numbered ①~④ using the words below and try the conversation again.

- A) ① There  
② Here  
③ Brown  
④ Blue

- B) ① There  
② Over there  
③ White  
④ Gray

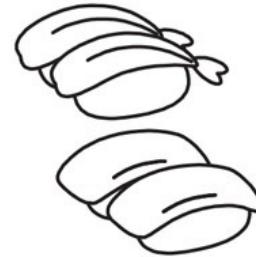


## □ Short dialogue 2

Mr. Tanaka is taking Mike to a sushi bar.

たなか さ n: Maiku さ n は (お)すしが すきですか。

Maiku: はい、だいすきです。



たなか さ n: なにが すきですか。

Maiku: まぐろと えびが すきです。

たなか さ n: そうですか。Wa たしは、ひらめといかが すきです。  
には n の お茶が、すきですか。

Maiku: いいえ。には n の お茶が すきjaないです。  
でも、こらは すきです。

### New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
まぐろ	まぐろ	鮪	tuna
えび	えび	海老	shrimp
ひらめ	ひらめ	平目	halibut
いか	いか	イカ	squid

## □ Short dialogue 2 activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Talk about your most/least favorite sushi.
3. Talk about your most/least favorite beverage.

## □ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new characters, but you will also learn new words.

もしもし	hello (on the phone)	しも	frost
みみ	ear	め	eye
めだつ	to stand out	むね	chest
ひま	free time	むずかしい	difficult
もくじ	contents	ななめ	diagonal
まね	imitation		

## 7 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, then we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. あなたの いえは どこですか。
2. Wa たしは で nsha が すきです。でも, ひこうきは だいき ra いです。

## 7 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あなたの おかあさ n のく ru まは どこですか。

Where is your mother's car?

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 4: あなたの おかあさ n のく ru まは し ro いですか。

Is your mother's car white?

Lesson 5: あなたの おかあさ n は なにい ro のく ru まが すきですか。

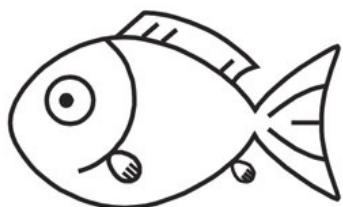
What color car does your mother like?

Lesson 6: あなたの おかあさ n は なにい ro のく ru まが ほしいですか。

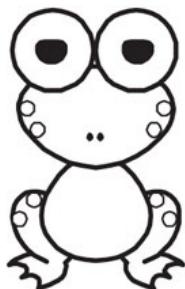
What color car does your mother want?

**Vocabulary Groups****J more animals**

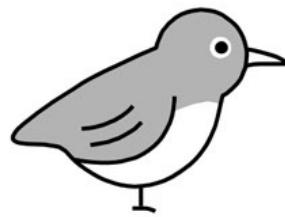
<b>Progressive</b>	<b>Kana</b>	<b>Kanji</b>	<b>English</b>
き ngyo	きんぎょ	金魚	goldfish
かめ	かめ	亀	tortoise; turtle
かえ ru	かえる	かえる	frog
ぶた	ぶた	豚	pig
はと	はと	はと	pigeon; dove
あひ ru	あひる	あひる	duck
かに	かに	蟹	crab
へび	へび	蛇	snake
と ri	とり	鳥	bird
robusuta-	ロブスター	ロブスター	lobster
とかげ	とかげ	とかげ	lizard
さかな	さかな	魚	fish
kyo ū ryu ū	きょうりゅう	恐竜	dinosaur



さかな



かえる



とり

Lesson

**8**

Level ①

**Dates and Past Tense**

The calendar

**8 About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read まみむめも
2. Understand how to use the question word どこ and how the particle は is used for emphasis.
3. Review vocabulary group J.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn the months, days of the month, and how to use でした.

**From The Teachers**

1. There are three new question words in this lesson. Many people get them mixed up. Concentrate on learning them.
2. The first ten days of the month might be somewhat difficult to remember. There is no internal pattern to them, so just memorize them. They are important because they set the pattern for other areas of counting.

**8 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ**

1. た njo うび おめでとう。
2. あけまして おめでとう。
3. おめでとう。

Happy Birthday.  
Happy New Year.  
Congratulations.

Note: You can also add ございます after おめでとう to sound more polite, but with friends and family it is not required.

## 8 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
いつ	いつ	いつ	when?
な n にち	なんにち	何日	what day of the month?
な n がつ	なんがつ	何月	what month?
kyo う	きょう	今日	today
あした	あした	明日	tomorrow
きのう	きのう	昨日	yesterday
た njo うび	たんじょうび	誕生日	birthday
kurisumasu	クリスマス	クリスマス	Christmas
どく ri つきね n び	どくりつきねんび	独立記念日	Independence Day
purezento	プレゼント	プレゼント	present, gift
goruden wi-ku	ゴールデンウィーク	ゴールデンウィーク	Golden Week
けんぽうきね n び	けんぽうきねんび	憲法記念日	Constitution Day
こどものひ	こどものひ	子供の日	Children's Day
ぶ n かのひ	ぶんかのひ	文化の日	Culture Day
たいいくのひ	たいいくのひ	体育の日	Sports Day

## 8 Culture Clip: Christmas and other holidays in Japan



The Japanese celebrate Christmas every year, just as many westerners do. In Japan, though, it is a custom to eat a “Christmas cake” on Christmas Eve with the entire family, and on Christmas day they eat chicken. Let's look at some other Japanese holidays:

Constitution Day (May 3)  
Culture Day (November 3)

Children's Day (May 5)  
Sports Day (2nd Monday in October)

Golden Week, a period of consecutive holidays, happens in the first week of May. During this week, many people return to their home towns to celebrate with family.

## Days of the Month にち

1 <sup>st</sup>	ついたち	ついたち	一日
2 <sup>nd</sup>	ふつか	ふつか	二日
3 <sup>rd</sup>	みっか	みっか	三日
4 <sup>th</sup>	yo っか	よっか	四日
5 <sup>th</sup>	いつか	いつか	五日
6 <sup>th</sup>	むいか	むいか	六日
7 <sup>th</sup>	なのか	なのか	七日
8 <sup>th</sup>	yo うか	ようか	八日
9 <sup>th</sup>	ここのか	ここのか	九日
10 <sup>th</sup>	とおか	とおか	十日
11 <sup>th</sup>	ju ういちにち	じゅういちにち	十一日
12 <sup>th</sup>	ju うににち	じゅうににち	十二日
13 <sup>th</sup>	ju うさ n にち	じゅうさん Nichi	十三日
14 <sup>th</sup>	ju う yo っか	じゅうよっか	十四日
15 <sup>th</sup>	ju うごにち	じゅうごにち	十五日
16 <sup>th</sup>	ju う roくにち	じゅうろくにち	十六日
17 <sup>th</sup>	ju う(しち/なな)にち	じゅう(しち/なな)にち	十七日
18 <sup>th</sup>	ju うはちにち	じゅうはちにち	十八日
19 <sup>th</sup>	ju うくにち	じゅうくにち	十九日
20 <sup>th</sup>	はつか	はつか	二十日
21 <sup>st</sup>	に ju ういちにち	にじゅういちにち	二十一日
22 <sup>nd</sup>	に ju うににち	にじゅうににち	二十二日
23 <sup>rd</sup>	に ju うさ n にち	にじゅうさん Nichi	二十三日
24 <sup>th</sup>	に ju う yo っか	にじゅうよっか	二十四日
25 <sup>th</sup>	に ju うごにち	にじゅうごにち	二十五日
26 <sup>th</sup>	に ju う roくにち	にじゅうろくにち	二十六日
27 <sup>th</sup>	に ju うしちにち	にじゅうしちにち	二十七日
28 <sup>th</sup>	に ju うはちにち	にじゅうはちにち	二十八日
29 <sup>th</sup>	に ju うくにち	にじゅうくにち	二十九日
30 <sup>th</sup>	さ n ju うにち	さんじゅうにち	三十日
31 <sup>st</sup>	さ n ju ういちにち	さんじゅういちにち	三十一日

## 8 Cool Tools クール・ツール

The fourth day (yo つか) and the eighth day of the month (yo うか) are often confused because they sound alike.

This hint might help: the “yo” in yo つか is short, while the “yo” in yo うか has an う after it which makes it double in length. Understanding this, remember that 8 is double 4 in order to remember that the eighth day of the month has the longer sound.

On the previous page, the 14<sup>th</sup>, 20<sup>th</sup> and 24<sup>th</sup> have been highlighted. Pay attention to those three numbers, as they do not follow the pattern you might expect.

## 8 Months つき

The Japanese months are created with numbers and the Japanese kanji symbol for the moon, 月. The days of the month taught on the previous page are created with numbers and the Japanese kanji symbol for the sun, 日.

Months つき			
January	いちがつ	いちがつ	一月
February	にがつ	にがつ	二月
March	さんがつ	さんがつ	三月
April	しがつ	しがつ	四月
May	ごがつ	ごがつ	五月
June	ろくがつ	ろくがつ	六月
July	しちがつ	しちがつ	七月
August	はちがつ	はちがつ	八月
September	くがつ	くがつ	九月
October	じゅうがつ	じゅうがつ	十月
November	じゅういちがつ	じゅういちがつ	十一月
December	じゅうにがつ	じゅうにがつ	十二月

## 8 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ Making sentences in the past tense

でした is the past tense of です. It's used exactly like です except that it makes the sentence past tense. です means, "is, am, are," etc., and でした means "was, were," etc.

[sentence] でした。

**It was [sentence]**

[sentence] でしたか。

**Was it [sentence]?**

#### Examples Q&A

- |                                     |                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. クルマは 明日 でしたか。<br>明日の クルマ でした。    | <u>Was</u> the car red?<br>It <u>was</u> a red car.                                 |
| 2. わたし でしたか。<br>あなた でした。            | <u>Was</u> it me?<br>It <u>was</u> you.                                             |
| 3. きのうは ついたち でしたか。<br>ふつかは いつ でしたか。 | <u>Was</u> yesterday the 1 <sup>st</sup> ?<br>When <u>was</u> the 2 <sup>nd</sup> ? |

### □ Saying dates with month and day of the month

When saying full dates – for example, “December 10th,” or “the 20th of January” – you must always say the month first and then the day of the month.

**MONTH + DAY OF MONTH**

#### Examples

- |                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. January 5th          | いちがつ いつか          |
| 2. May 9th              | ごがつ ここのか          |
| 3. the 22nd of December | Ju うにがつ に ju うににち |

## 8 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

1. いつですか  
あしたです。  
Kyo うです。  
きのうでした。  
  
**When is it?**  
It's tomorrow.  
It's today.  
It was yesterday.
2. な n にちですか。  
Yo っかです。  
に ju うくにちです。  
ついたちです。  
  
**What day of the month is it?**  
It's the 4th.  
It's the 29th.  
It's the 1st.
3. な n がつですか。  
しちがつです。  
Ju うにがつです。  
しがつです。  
  
**What month is it?**  
It's July.  
It's December.  
It's April.
4. あしたは な n にちですか。  
あしたは ju うににちです。  
あしたは さ n-ju うにちです。  
たぶn、なのかです。  
  
**What day of the month is tomorrow?**  
Tomorrow is the 12th.  
Tomorrow is the 30th.  
Maybe it is the 7th.
5. た njo うびは な n がつですか。  
くがつです。  
きのうでした。  
あしたです。  
  
**What month is (your) birthday?**  
It's September.  
It was yesterday.  
It's tomorrow.
6. たなかさ n の た njo うびは いつですか。  
Ju うがつに ju う ro くにちです。  
はちがつ ふつかです。  
ごがつ ju う yo っかです。  
  
**When is Tanaka's birthday?**  
It's October 26th.  
It's August 2nd.  
It's May 14th.

## 8 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. **What is the month and day of Children's Day?**  
こどものひは な n がつ な n にちですか。

Children's Day is May 5th.  
こどものひは ごがつ いつかです。

**2. When is Culture Day?**

ぶ n かのひ は いつ ですか。

It's November 3rd.

Ju ういちがつ みっか です。

I don't know. But my birthday is September 5th.

Wa か ri ませ n. でも、wa たしの た njo うびは くがつ いつか です。

**3. Is your father's birthday on May 10th?**

あなたの おとうさ n のた njo うびは ごがつ とおかですか。

Yes, it is.

はい、そうです。

No, it isn't.

いいえ、ちがいます。

No, it is on the 11th of March.

いいえ、さ n がつ じゅういちにちです。

**4. When is (your) birthday?**

た njo うびは いつ ですか。

It's October 1st.

Ju うがつ ついたち です。

It's February 7th.

にがつ なのか です。

**5. What was the date yesterday?**

きのうは な n にち でしたか。

Yesterday was the 14th.

きのうは ju う yo っか でした。

I don't know.

Wa か ri ませ n.

**6. Is Golden Week in July?**

Goruden wi-ku は しちがつ ですか。

No, it's in May.

いいえ、ごがつ です。

No, it's not in July.

いいえ、しちがつ ja ないです。

**7. Was yesterday the 5th?**

きのうは いつか でしたか。

No it was the 9th.

いいえ、ここのか でした。

**8****Reading Comprehension どっかい**

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

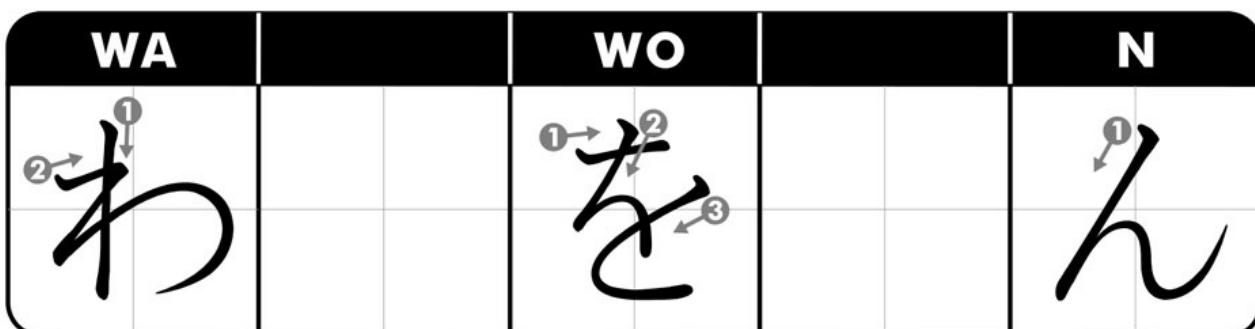
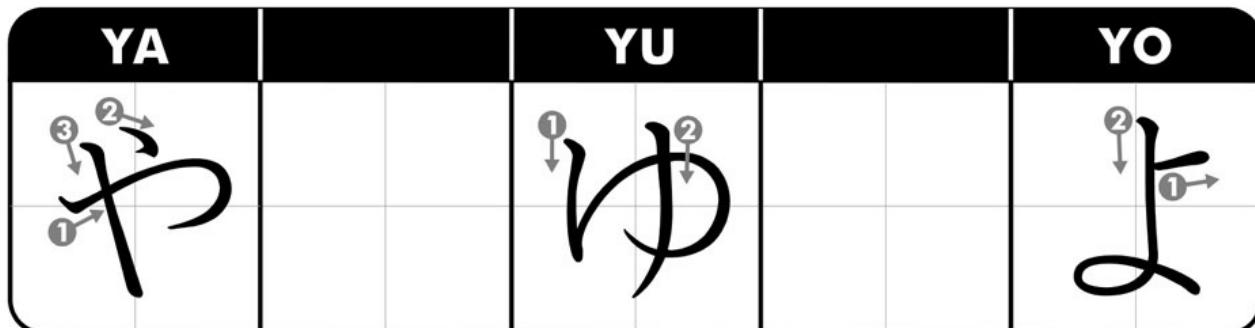
- ① Wa たしの なまえは ゆきこです。
- ② きのうは wa たしの た njo うび でした。に ju うななさいです。
- ③ Wa たしの た njo うびは kurisumasu です。
- ④ ともだちの purezento は あかい はし でした。
- ⑤ おとうさ n の purezento は にほ n ごの ほ n でした。
- ⑥ わたしは にほ n が だいすきです。



## Hiragana や ゆ よ わ を ん

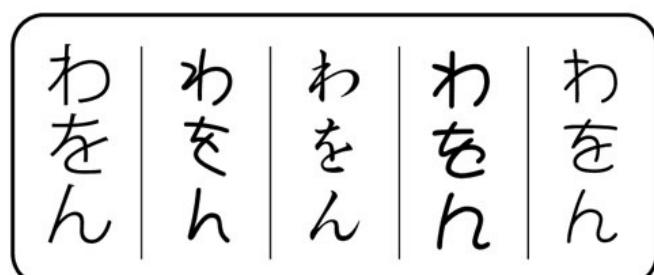
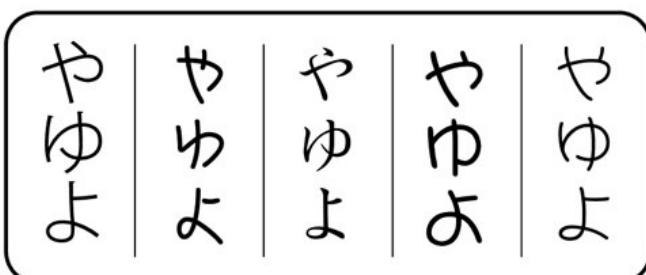
### や New Hiragana あたらしい ひらがな

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order.



### や Various Styles スタイル

Look at the various possible styles for the hiragana in this lesson. Write each symbol as neatly as you can, then compare it to the different versions below.



## や Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

ya	や	や					
yu	ゆ	ゆ					
yo	よ	よ					
wa	わ	わ					
wo	を	を					
n	ん	ん					

## や Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1.   ra う (to laugh)  
wa

2. だいこ   (radish)  
n

3. みず  のむ (to drink water)  
wo

4.   ru い (bad)  
wa

5.   たし (me, I)  
wa

6. ほ    かう (to buy a book)  
n wo

7. こ n ya (tonight, this evening)

8. wa す reru (to forget)

9. えいが wo み ru (to watch a movie)

10. き n ぞく (metal)

11. か n た n (easy)

12. すし wo たべ ru (to eat sushi)

## や Special Usage とくべつな つかいかた

### □ The particle を (wo)

The hiragana を is only used as a particle (object marker). It is never used for any other purpose. Even though "wo" is normally pronounced "o", お can never replace を as a particle.

#### Example Sentences

1. てがみを (wo) かきます。

I will write a letter.

2. えんぴつを (wo) ください。

Give me a pencil please.

## や Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

わに  
(alligator)


やね  
(roof)


ゆび  
(finger)


ゆうべ  
(last night)


わかめ  
(seaweed)

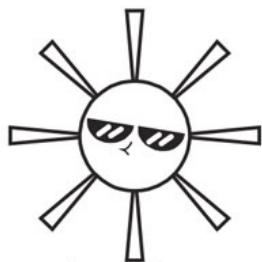

こんや  
(tonight)


かんたん  
(easy)


うわさ  
(rumor)


ゆびわ  
(ring)


## や Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうのことば



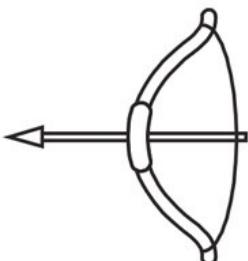
たいよう  
the sun



うわぎ  
jacket



ゆかた  
light kimono



ゆみや  
bow and arrow



かわかす  
to dry



じてんsha  
bicycle

**や****Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング**

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

は ·

• yu

よ ·

• to

ゆ ·

• n

わ ·

• wo (o)

と ·

• ha

や ·

• wa

を ·

• yo

ん ·

• ya

## 8 Lesson Activities

### □ Questions

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. おとうさんのたんじょうびはいつですか。

---

2. Kurisumasuは、なんがつなんにちですか。

---

3. なんがつがすきですか。

---

4. Kyoうは、なんがつなんにちですか。

---

5. きのうは、なんがつなんにちでしたか。

---

6. こどものひはしちがつよっかですか。

---

### □ Dates

Write the following dates in Japanese.

1. あなたのおかあさんのたんじょうび

---

2. けんぽうきねんび

---

3. March 15

---

4. ぶんかのひ

---

5. こどものひ

---

6. April 20

---

#### □ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversations into English. Then, in the space after the number write where you think the conversation is taking place and if it is polite, informal or mixed.

1.

いまいさん: たんじょうびはいつですか。  
やまださん: さんがつにじゅうさんにちです。あなたのは?  
いまいさん: わたしのたんじょうびはあしたです。  
やまださん: おめでとう! なんさいですか。  
いまいさん: さんじゅうはっさいです。

いまいさん:

やまださん:

いまいさん:

やまださん:

いまいさん:

## □ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. ゆきこさんの たんじょうびは いつでしたか。

---

2. ゆきこさんは なんさいですか。

---

3. ともだちの purezento は なにいじの はしでしたか。

---

4. おとうさんの purezento は なんでしたか。

---

5. ゆきこさんは、にほんがきらいですか。

---

## □ Short dialogue

While talking with Mr. Hino, Mr. Honda realizes that he forgot his girlfriend's birthday.

ほんださん: Kyoうは、なんにちですか。

ひのさん: ここのかです。

ほんださん: えっ、なのかじゃないです。

ひのさん: いいえ、あしたは、とおかです。

ほんださん: どうしよう...。きのうは、かのじょうの誕生日でした。

ひのさん: ほんとうですか。



**New words and expressions in the dialogue**

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
どうしよう	どうしよう	どうしよう	What shall I do?
ほんとうですか。	ほんとうですか。	本当ですか。	Really?

**□ Short dialogue activities**

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Talk about the dates for today, yesterday, and tomorrow.

**□ More words you can write**

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana, but you will also learning new words.

やね	roof	たんさん	carbonation
ゆうえんち	fun park	ようちえん	kindergarten
およめさん	bride	しわ	wrinkles
きんようび	Friday	しんかんせん	bullet train
いわ	rock	うわさ	a rumor
みずを のむ	to drink water		

**8 Drill ドリル**

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, then we recommend that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Kyo うは なんにち ですか。
2. あなたの たんじょうびは なんがつですか。
3. あしたは はつかですか。

## 8 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

**あなたの おかあさん のたん jo うびは いつですか。**

**When is your mother's birthday?**

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 5: あなたの おかあさんは なにい ro のく ru まが すきですか。  
What color car does your mother like?

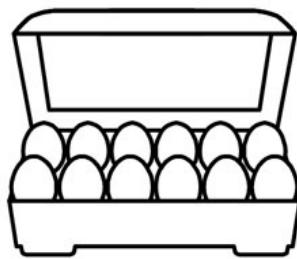
Lesson 6: あなたの おかあさんは なにい ro のく ru まが ほしいですか。  
What color car does your mother want?

Lesson 7: あなたの おかあさん のく ru まは どこですか。  
Where is your mother's car?

## Vocabulary Groups

### K food and drink

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
たまご	たまご	卵	egg
ごはん	ごはん	ご飯	boiled rice
miruku	ミルク	ミルク	milk
みず	みず	水	water
ju-su	ジュース	ジュース	juice
くり	くり	栗	chestnut
pan	パン	パン	bread
keeki	ケーキ	ケーキ	cake
aisu kuri-mu	アイス・クリーム	アイス・クリーム	ice cream
にんじん	にんじん	人参	carrot
tomato	トマト	トマト	tomato
だいこん	だいこん	大根	radish
たまねぎ	たまねぎ	玉ねぎ	onion
こしょう	こしょう	こしょう	pepper
しお	しお	塩	salt
えび	えび	海老	shrimp
にく	にく	肉	meat
poteto	ポテト	ポテト	potato



たまご



アイス・クリーム



ケーキ

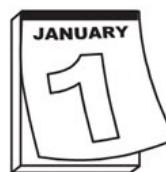
Lesson

**9**

Level ①

**Days, Weeks, and Years**

Next week, next month

**9****About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read やゆよわをん.
2. Be able to say dates and months in Japanese and how to use でした.
3. Review vocabulary group K.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn the days of the week and years.

**From The Teachers**

1. The new words in this lesson are important in everyday conversations. Since some of the words are similar spend some extra time memorizing them.

**9****New Words あたらしい ことば**

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
なんようび	なんようび	何曜日	what day of the week?
なんねん	なんねん	何年	what year?
いま	いま	今	now
おととい	おととい	一昨日	day before yesterday
あさって	あさって	明後日	day after tomorrow
せん shu う	せんしゅう	先週	last week
こん shu う	こんしゅう	今週	this week
らい shu う	らいしゅう	来週	next week
せんげつ	せんげつ	先月	last month
こんげつ	こんげつ	今月	this month
らいげつ	らいげつ	来月	next month

kyo ねん	きょねん	去年	last year
ことし	ことし	今年	this year
ra いねん	らいねん	来年	next year
せいねんがっぴ	せいねんがっぴ	生年月日	date of birth
がんたん	がんたん	元旦	New Year's Day
pa-ti-	パーティー	パーティー	party

### Days of the Week ようび

Monday	げつようび	月曜日
Tuesday	かようび	火曜日
Wednesday	すいようび	水曜日
Thursday	もくようび	木曜日
Friday	きんようび	金曜日
Saturday	どようび	土曜日
Sunday	にちようび	日曜日

## 9 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. なんねん うま re ですか。 In what year were you born?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ うま re です。 I was born in the year \_\_\_\_\_.

## 9 Culture Clip: Japan's New Year

In Japan, the New Year is the most important holiday period. It is as important in Japan as Christmas is in the United States. From January 1<sup>st</sup> until one week after, Japan almost comes to a stop. Most stores and companies are closed while everyone celebrates the New Year.

## 9 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ Expressing the year

ねん literally means “year.” To say a year you simply say the number of the year and add ねん to it. In Japanese, years cannot be represented as they are in English. For example, you cannot express 1998 as “nineteen—ninety—eight.” The full number must be stated.

#### Examples

- the year 1980
- the year 1801
- the year 2010
- the year 2017

せん kyu う hya くはち ju う ねん  
せんはつ pya くいち ねん  
にせん ju う ねん  
にせん ju うなな ねん

### □ Saying complete dates including the year

Complete dates in Japanese always start with the year, then are followed by month and day of the month. Just remember the order is always from the largest time span to the smallest.

**YEAR + MONTH + DAY OF MONTH**

#### Examples

1. May 11, 2005  
にせんごねん ごがつ ju ういちにち
2. January 20, 2011  
にせん ju ういちねん いちがつ はつか
3. April 5, 1999  
せん kyu う hya く kyu う ju う kyu う ねん しがつ いつか
4. August 30, 2015  
にせん ju うごねん はちがつさん ju うにち

## □ Next Friday, last March, etc.

When saying things like “Monday of last week” or “May of next year”, you must link the words together with の. In the following examples, の means “of”. Just as in saying complete dates, the order is always from the largest time span to the smallest.

### Examples

1. ra i shu うのきんようび	Friday <u>of</u> next week
2. こん shu うのげつようび	Monday <u>of</u> this week
3. ra いげつの ju うごにち	the 15 <sup>th</sup> <u>of</u> next month
4. せんげつのついたち	the 1 <sup>st</sup> <u>of</u> last month
5. ことしのさんがつ	March <u>of</u> this year
6. kyo ねんのはちがつ	August <u>of</u> last year
7. せん kyu う hya くご ju うねんの にがつ	February <u>of</u> 1950
8. にせんご hya くねんの ro くがつ	June <u>of</u> 2500

## 9

## Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

### 1. What day is it?

It's Monday.

It's Friday.

It's Wednesday.

なんようび ですか。

げつようび です。

きんようび です。

すいようび です。

### 2. What day is today?

Today is Saturday.

Today is Sunday.

I don't know.

Kyo うは なんようび ですか。

Kyo うは どようび です。

Kyo うは にちようび です。

わか ri ません。

### 3. When is the party?

The party is the day after tomorrow.

The party is today.

It's Friday of next week.

It was yesterday.

Pa-ti-は いつですか。

Pa-ti-は あさって です。

Pa-ti-は kyo う です。

Ra i shu うの きんようび です。

きのう でした。

### 4. When is Thanksgiving?

It's on November 27<sup>th</sup>.

It was last week.

It was last month.

It's Thursday of next week.

かん sha さいは いつですか。

Ju ういちがつ に ju うななにち です。

せん shu う でした。

せんげつ でした。

らいしゅうの もくようび です。

## 5. What day was the Christmas of 1935?

Maybe it was Thursday.  
It was Wednesday.

せん kyu う hya くさん ju うごねんの  
kurisumasu は なんようび でしたか。  
たぶん、もくようび でした。  
すいようび でした。

## 9

## Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

- ① Kyo うは ju うにがつ さん ju うにちです。
- ② あさっては がんたんです。
- ③ ことしのがんたんは もくようびです。
- ④ Kyo ねんのがんたんは すいようびでした。

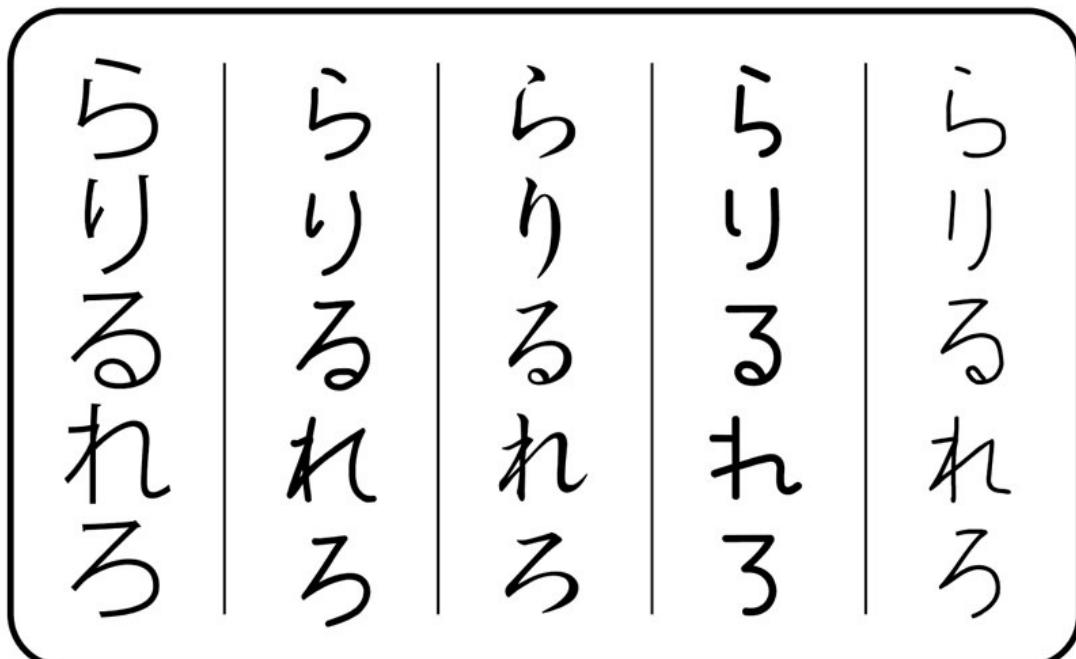


**Hiragana らりるれろ****ら New Hiragana あたらしいひらがな**

Make sure you learn the correct stroke order since correct stroke order will mean neater characters when writing fast.

**ら Various Styles スタイル**

Write each character as neatly as you can and compare it to the different versions.



## ら Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

ra	ら	ら					
ri	り	り					
ru	る	る					
re	れ	れ					
ro	ろ	ろ					

## ら Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. あた  しい (new)  
ra

2. し   (to know)  
ru

3.   んあい (true love)  
re

4.   んご (apple)  
ri

5. みせ   (to show)  
ru

6.   ん shu う (practice)  
re

7. べん   (convenient)  
ri

8. う  おい (moisture)  
ru

9. かく んぼ (hide and seek)  
re

10. どう ろ (road)

11. うか (hallway)  
ro

12. まわ みち (detour)  
ri

5

Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうのことば



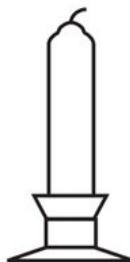
to sleep, go to bed



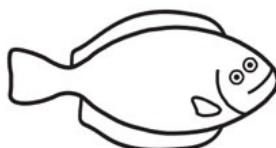
いくら  
salted salmon eggs



くすり  
medicine



ろうそく  
candle



かれい  
flounder



かみなり  
thunder, lightning

5

## Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana that you just learned. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

## りか (science)

よる  
(night)

--	--	--	--

れい  
(example)





まる  
(circle)





こおり  
(ice)




あひる  
(duck)




かえる  
(frog)




りんご  
(apple)




べんり  
(convenient)




ひだり  
(left)




みずいろ  
(light blue)



きいろ  
(yellow)




ろうそく  
(candle)



さる  
(monkey)





**ら****Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング**

Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

る •

• ru

し •

• shi

り •

• re

ろ •

• i

ぬ •

• ro

れ •

• ra

い •

• nu

ら •

• ri

**9** Lesson Activities Event dates

Write the corresponding events and dates in Japanese for the following pictures.

1.



2.



event: \_\_\_\_\_

event: \_\_\_\_\_

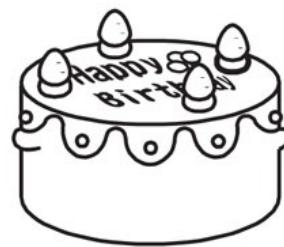
date: \_\_\_\_\_

date: \_\_\_\_\_

3.



4.



event: \_\_\_\_\_

event: \_\_\_\_\_

date: \_\_\_\_\_

date: \_\_\_\_\_

## □ Questions

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Use the hiragana that you have learned when writing your answers.

1. あさっては なんようび ですか。

---

2. おとといは なんがつ なんにち でしたか。

---

3. たん jo うびは、なんがつ なんにち ですか。

---

4. Kyo ねんは なんねん でしたか。

---

5. せんげつの ついたちは なんようび でしたか。

---

6. らい shu うの もくようびは なんにち ですか。

---

7. せん shu うの どようびは なんにち でしたか。

---

8. らいねんは、なんねんですか。

---

**□ Japanese translation**

Translate the reading comprehension in this lesson into English.

①

②

③

④

**□ Short dialogue**

Youko and Takahiro are talking about their birthdays.

ようこ: こん shu うの きんようびは わたしの たん jo うびです。

たかひろ: そうですか。たん jo うび おめでとう。

ようこ: ありがとう。

たかひろ: なんねんうまれですか。

ようこ: せん kyu う hya くなな ju うさんねんうまれです。

たかひろ: わたしも です。わたしの たん jo うびは  
せん kyu う hya くなな ju うさんねんの ろくがつ  
みっかです。

ようこ: ほんとう？

たかひろ: たん jo うび pa-ti-は、いつですか。

ようこ: こん shu うの どようびです。

### New words and expressions in the dialogue

#### Progressive

ほんとう?  
わたしも

#### Kanji

本当?  
私も

#### English

Is that true? Really?  
Me too.

### □ Short dialogue activities

Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.

Talk about your birthday (including the year) with your partner.

Use the following questions:

1. たんじょうびはいつですか / なんがつなんにちですか。
2. なんねんうまれですか。



### □ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing new hiragana, but you will also learn new words.

らんぼう	violence	こんらん	confusion
あらし	a storm	れんらく	contact
かみなり	thunder; lightning	どろぼう	a thief
どんぐり	acorn	ろうじん	old person
れいぞうこ	refrigerator	らくがき	graffiti
りゆう	a reason	ろうか	hallway
かいろう	heat pad	わすれもの	forgotten item
めじるし	landmark	めずらしい	rare (adj.)
くるま	car		

## 9

### Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, then it is recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Kyo うは なんようびですか。
2. きんようびは なんにちですか。
3. らい shu うの にちようびは わたしの ともだちの た njo うびです。
4. Kyo ねんの にがつは さむかったですか。

**9 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり**

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. The previous sentence was あなたの おかあさんのたんじょうびは いつですか.

ことし、あなたの おかあさんの たんじょうびは なんようびでしたか。

**On what day of the week was your mother's birthday this year?**

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lessons:

Lesson 6: あなたの おかあさんは なにいろの くるまが ほしいですか。

What color car does your mother want?

Lesson 7: あなたの おかあさんの くるまは どこですか。

Where is your mother's car?

Lesson 8: あなたの おかあさんの たんじょうびは いつですか。

When is your mother's birthday?

**Vocabulary Groups****L nature****Progressive**

やま  
あめ  
たいよう  
つき  
ゆき  
はる  
なつ  
あき  
ふゆ

**Kanji**

山  
雨  
太陽  
月  
雪  
春  
夏  
秋  
冬

**English**

mountain  
rain  
sun  
moon  
snow  
spring  
summer  
autumn, fall  
winter



## Asking for Things

Give me something, please.



### 10 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

#### Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read らりるれろ.
2. Review vocabulary group L.

#### Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to ask for things using "please".
2. Learn how to specify one item over another using "this" and "that".

#### From The Teachers

1. Memorize the new phrases in this lesson. They will come in handy later.

### 10 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

- |                                                                                              |                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. いらっしゃいませ。                                                                                 | Welcome! (at a place of business)                                                                              |
| 2. おまちください。                                                                                  | Please wait a moment. (very polite)                                                                            |
| 3. ちょっとまってください。                                                                              | Wait a minute. (informal)                                                                                      |
| 4. なにがいいですか。<br>This can also mean "what is good?" depending on the conversation.            | What would you like?<br>This can also mean "what is good?" depending on the conversation.                      |
| 5. _____がいいです。<br>This is a response to なにがいいですか。                                            | I would like a _____.<br>This is a response to なにがいいですか。                                                       |
| 6. ありがとうございました。<br>This is used to say "thank you" for something that has already been done. | Thank you very much. (past tense)<br>This is used to say "thank you" for something that has already been done. |
| 7. どうぞ。                                                                                      | Here you go. / Go ahead.                                                                                       |

## 10 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
いくら	いくら	いくら	How much?
menu-	メニュー	メニュー	menu
poteto	ポテト	ポテト	French fries
chi-zuba-ga-	チーズバーガー	チーズバーガー	cheeseburger
piza	ピザ	ピザ	pizza
supagetti-	スパゲッティー	スパゲッティー	spaghetti
bi-fu	ビーフ	ビーフ	beef
sandoicchi	サンドイッチ	サンドイッチ	sandwich
sando	サンド	サンド	sandwich (short vers.)
deza-to	デザート	デザート	dessert
あっ！	あっ！	あっ！	Oh!
おつり	おつり	お釣	change
(お)のみもの	(お)のみもの	飲み物	a drink
たべもの	たべもの	食べ物	food
おかし	おかし	お菓子	a snack
みそしる	みそしる	味噌汁	miso soup
おひや	おひや	お冷	cold drinking water
お cha	おちゃ	お茶	green tea

## 10 Grammar ぶんぽう

### Please give me (standard)

ください is an equivalent of the English word “please.” ください is always used in a sentence and cannot be used by itself. The direct object particle を marks the object being requested.

Give me [something], please.

[something] を ください。

### Examples sentences

1. Give me some water, please.
2. Please give me a pencil.
3. An apple, please.

みずを ください。  
えんぴつを ください。  
りんごを ください。

### □ Please give me (polite)

おねがい します basically means "please" or "I request of you." It's used the same way ください is used, but is a more polite way to ask for something. The object marker を marks the object being requested.

**Would you please give me [something]  
[something] を おねがい します。**

### Examples sentences

1. みずを おねがい します.
2. えんぴつを おねがい します.
3. りんごを おねがい します.

Would you please give me some water?  
Would you please give me a pencil?  
Would you please give me an apple?

Unlike ください, おねがいします can be used alone to just say "please" or "I request."

### Example conversation

1. A: のみものが ほしいですか。  
B: おねがい します。
- A: はい、どうぞ。
- B: ありがとうございました。

Do you want a drink?  
Please.  
Here you go.  
Thank you.

### □ The difference between ください and おねがい します

ください and おねがい します are both polite. Normally you can use ください without being considered rude at all. In situations where you are requesting something from someone above you in status, or in situations where you wish to be more polite, then おねがい します should be used.

### □ The particle も

The particle も means "too" or "also". Like the other particles you have learned, it comes after the word it is referring to. When it is applied to the topic of the sentence it takes the place of は or が completely.

**Example Conversations**

1. A: なにが すきですか。  
B: Banana が すきです。  
りんごも すきです。  
What do you like?  
I like bananas.  
I like apples too.
2. A: なにが いいですか。  
B: Robusuta–とお cha をください。  
A: わたしも お cha をください。  
What would you like?  
Give me a lobster and tea please.  
Give me tea also.
3. A: わたしは じてん sha が きらいです。  
B: わたしも きらいです。  
I dislike bicycles.  
I also dislike them.
4. A: わたしは 1998 ねん うまれです。  
B: わたしも 1998 ねん うまれです。  
みか cha んも 1998 ねん うまれです。  
I was born in 1998.  
I was also born in 1998.  
Mika was also born in 1998.

**□ A funny problem with particle choice**

Even native Japanese speakers make the common mistake of telling a girl, "You are pretty today," by saying:

Kyo うは きれいです。  
You are pretty today.

The trap is how the particle は puts emphasis on kyo う. You are saying, "As for today, you are pretty," and this implies all other days she is not pretty! Typically, you can avoid this by changing the は to a も:

Kyo うも きれいです。  
You are pretty today also.

This problem can happen anytime you give someone a compliment. So make sure to choose your particles wisely!

**□ Sizes**

In this lesson sizes are introduced with the words *esu* (S), *emu* (M), and *eru* (L). As you can tell, the sizes are words borrowed from English. These words are the most common way to describe the sizes of clothing or the food served in fast food restaurants. To say, "large cola," you can't just string *eru* and *ko-ra* together. You must make *eru* into a の adjective by adding の. This is the pattern for all size words.

**Examples**

1. Esu の ko-ra と emu の poteto を おねがいします。  
Please give me a small cola and medium fries.
2. Eru の piza が ほしいです。  
I want a large pizza.

**10 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E****1. Conversation between a waitress and a customer**

- A: いらっしゃいませ。
- B: おはようございます。ここはなにがおいしいですか。
- A: ここは chikin sando がおいしいです。Supagetti-もおいしいです。
- B: Ja あ、supagetti-をください。
- A: Welcome to the store.
- B: Good morning. What tastes good here?
- A: The chicken sandwich is delicious. The spaghetti is also delicious.
- B: Well then, some spaghetti please.

**2. Conversation in a sandwich shop**

- A: すみません、chikin su-pu はいくらですか。
- B: さん bya くえんです。
- A: Ja あ、ko-ra と chikin su-pu をください。
- A: Excuse me, how much is chicken soup?
- B: It's 300 yen.
- A: Well then, give me a cola and chicken soup, please.

**3. Conversation at a fast food restaurant counter**

- A: Chi-zuba-ga-をください。あつ、poteto もください。
- B: おのみものは？
- A: Ko-hi-をください。
- B: はい、sho う sho う おまちください。
- A: A cheeseburger, please. Oh, and fries too, please.
- B: Would you like a drink?
- A: A coffee, please.
- B: Please wait a few moments.

#### 4. Conversation in a pizza restaurant

A: Pizzaをおねがいします。Ko-raもおねがいします。

B: はい、わかりました。

A: Would you please give me some pizza? A cola also, please.

B: Okay.

### 10 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

#### 1. Conversation at a friend's house

A: Would you please give me some chopsticks?

B: What?

A: Chopsticks, please.

A: おはしをおねがいします。

B: なんですか。

A: おはしをください。

#### 2. Conversation in a pizza restaurant

A: Excuse me. I want a pizza. How much are they?

B: Pizzas are 1200 yen.

A: They sure are cheap.

A: すみません。Pizzaがほしいです。いくらですか。

B: Pizzaはせんにhyaくえんです。

A: やすいですね。

#### 3. Conversation in a restaurant

A: Excuse me. What is good (delicious) today?

B: The beef soup is good today. But the chicken soup is also good.

A: Well then, give me the beef soup, please.

A: すみません。kyoうはなにがおいしいですか。

B: Kyoうはbi-fu su-puがおいしいです。でも、chikin su-puもおいしいです。

A: Jaあ, bi-fu su-puをください。

#### 4. Conversation in a restaurant

A: Some miso soup, please.  
 B: Ok, please wait a few minutes.  
 B: (5 minutes later) Here you go.  
 A: Some cold water also, please.

A: みそしるをおねがいします。  
 B: はい、sho う sho うおまちください。  
 B: (5 minutes later) はい、どうぞ。  
 A: おひやもおねがいします。

## 10 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the conversations below. If you don't understand them, review this lesson's grammar.

The following conversation takes place in a restaurant in Japan.

### A customer enters a restaurant...

Waitress: いらっしゃいませ！  
 Customer: menuーをおねがいします。

### 5 minutes later...

Customer: すみません。  
 Waitress: はい。  
 Customer: supagettiーをください。  
 Waitress: おのみものはなにがいいですか。  
 Customer: みずをください。  
 Waitress: はい、sho う sho うおまちください。

### 10 minutes later...

Waitress: はい、どうぞ  
 Customer: ありがとうございます。おchaとko-raをください。  
 Waitress: はい、sho う sho うおまちください。

### 40 minutes later...

Customer: いくらですか  
 Waitress: にせんご hyaくにjuういちえんです。  
 Customer: はい。  
 Waitress: おつりはよん hyaくななjuうkyuうえんです。  
 ありがとうございます。

## Compound Hiragana

The final hiragana are easy! There are only 33 official hiragana left to learn - but don't let that number scare you. They are all made up of the hiragana that you already know. Just by looking at them you should already have an idea of the sound that they represent.

### Examples

き (ki)	+	や (ya)	=	き ゃ (kyā)
し (shi)	+	ゅ (yu)	=	し ゅ (shū)
ち (chi)	+	ょ (yo)	=	ち ょ (cho)

## き ゃ Writing Points かくポイント

### □ The correct way to write compound hiragana

When writing compound hiragana, make sure that the second character is visibly smaller than the first character.

ro-maji	correct	incorrect
mya	み ゃ	み や
ryo	り ょ	り よ
chu	ち ゅ	ち ゆ
kyā	き ゃ	き や
pyā	ぴ ゃ	ぴ や

## □ Compound Hiragana

The following are the compound hiragana. They are created using the hiragana you already know so you should have no problem learning these.

きや kyा	きゅ kyu	きょ kyo
ぎや gya	ぎゅ gyu	ぎょ gyo
しや sha	しゅ shu	しょ sho
じや ja	じゅ ju	じょ jo
ちや cha	ちゅ chu	ちょ cho
にや nya	にゅ nyu	にょ nyo

ひや hya	ひゅ hyu	ひょ hyo
びや bya	びゅ byu	びょ byo
ぴや pya	ぴゅ pyu	ぴょ pyo
みや mya	みゅ myu	みょ myo
りや rya	りゅ ryu	りょ ryo

### きや Writing Practice れんしゅう

To practice correct stroke order, first trace the light gray characters, then write each character six times for practice.

KYA

き  
や

KYU

き  
ゅ

KYO

き  
ょ

**GYA**ぎ  
ぎ  
ぎや  
ゆ  
よ**GYU**ぎ  
ぎ  
ぎ

ゅ

**GYO**ぎ  
ぎ  
ぎ

ょ

**SHA**し  
し  
しゃ  
ゅ  
ょ**SHU**し  
し  
し

ゅ

**SHO**し  
し  
し

ょ

**JA**じ  
じ  
じゃ  
ゅ  
ょ**JU**じ  
じ  
じ

ゅ

**JO**じ  
じ  
じ

ょ

**CHA**ち  
ち  
ちゃ  
ゅ  
ょ**CHU**ち  
ち  
ち

ゅ

**CHO**ち  
ち  
ち

ょ

**NYA**

に ゃ

**NYU**

に ゅ

**NYO**

に ょ

**HYA**

ひ ゃ

**HYU**

ひ ゅ

**HYO**

ひ ょ

**BYA**

び ゃ

**BYU**

び ゅ

**BYO**

び ょ

**PYA**

ぴ ゃ

**PYU**

ぴ ゅ

**PYO**

ぴ ょ

**MYA**

み ゃ

**MYU**

み ゆ

**MYO**

み ょ

**RYA**

り ゃ

**RYU**

り ゆ

**RYO**

り ょ

## きや Word Practice ことばの れんしゅう

Fill in the appropriate hiragana in the blanks for each word.

1. とう    < (arrival)  
cha

2. さん    < (three hundred)  
bya

3. と    かん (library)  
sho

4.    う    う (cow's milk)  
gyu nyu

5. さん    < (mountain range)  
maya

6.    うばい (business, commerce)  
sho

7.    うたん (carpet)  
ju

8. でん    う (sales slip, voucher)  
pyo

9.    うだい (siblings)  
kyo

10.    う    う (dinosaur)  
kyo ryu

11.    うがく (study abroad)  
ryu

12.    うどん (beef bowl)  
gyu

## きや Words You Can Write かける ことば

Write the following words using the hiragana compounds that you've learned in this lesson. This is a great way to increase your Japanese vocabulary.

ち ょ う  
(butterfly)


き ゆ う  
(nine)


び よ う き  
(sick)


じゅう  
(ten)


りゅう  
(dragon)


ぎやく  
(reverse)


みょうじ  
(last name)


しゅうり  
(repair)


きょく  
(a song)


きょうと  
(Kyoto)


りょこう  
(travel)


かいしゃ  
(company)


でんしゃ  
(train)


きんぎょ  
(gold fish)


ちゃわん  
(bowl)


### きや Everyday Hiragana Words にちじょうのことば



ちきゅうぎ  
globe



しゅう  
state



おちゃ  
tea



べんきょう  
study



ちゅうしゃ  
shot



しゅうり  
repair

**きや Hiragana Matching ひらがな マッチング**

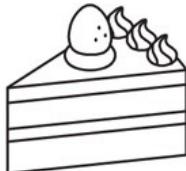
Connect the dots between each hiragana and the correct ro-maji.

- |       |       |
|-------|-------|
| ぎ ゃ • | • nyu |
| み ょ • | • shu |
| し ゅ • | • rya |
| ぴ ょ • | • ja  |
| り ゃ • | • myo |
| ち ょ • | • pyo |
| じ ゃ • | • cho |
| に ゅ • | • gya |

## 10 Lesson Activities

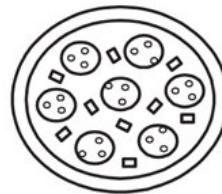
### □ Grammar drill 1

How would you order the following items at a restaurant? Use both ~をおねがいします and ~をください. Use と (and) if necessary.



1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_



3. \_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_



### □ Grammar drill 2

Answer the following questions in Japanese. Then add a second sentence using the particle も (also) or でも (but) as shown in the examples.

**Ex. いぬが すきですか。**

- はい、いぬが すきです。ねこも すきです。
- いいえ、いぬが きらいです。ねこも きらいです。
- いいえ、いぬが きらいです。でも、ねこは すきです。

1. あたらしい terebi が ほしいですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

2. はるが すきですか。

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Ko-ra は、おいしいですか。

---

4. あなたの くるまは、おおきいですか。

---

#### □ Conversation creation

Write an original conversation using the concepts learned in this lesson. Test yourself by using all of the hiragana that you have learned in this course.


#### □ Japanese translation

Translate the reading comprehension in this lesson into English.

##### A customer enters a restaurant...

Waitress: \_\_\_\_\_

Customer: \_\_\_\_\_

##### 5 minutes later...

Customer: \_\_\_\_\_

Waitress: \_\_\_\_\_

Customer: \_\_\_\_\_

Waitress: \_\_\_\_\_

Customer: \_\_\_\_\_

Waitress: \_\_\_\_\_

##### 10 minutes later...

Waitress: \_\_\_\_\_

Customer: \_\_\_\_\_

Waitress: \_\_\_\_\_

**40 minutes later...**

Customer: \_\_\_\_\_

Waitress: \_\_\_\_\_

Customer: \_\_\_\_\_

Waitress: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## □ Short dialogue

Sayuri and Chieko are at a Japanese restaurant ordering food and drinks.

**Waitress:** いらっしゃいませ。Menu-を どうぞ。

**さゆり:** ここは てんぷらが おいしいです。

**ちえこ:** そうですか。じゃあ、てんぷらが いいです。

**さゆり:** わたしも てんぷらが すきです。でも、きょうは  
とんかつが いいです。

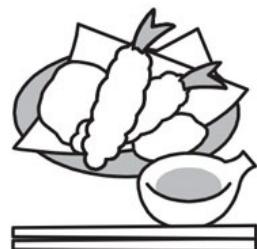
**ちえこ:** じゃあ、てんぷらと とんかつをおねがいします。

**Waitress:** かしこまりました。おのみものは なにが よろしいですか。

**さゆり:** Aisu ti- を ください。

**ちえこ:** わたしは おちゃをおねがいします。

**Waitress:** かしこまりました。



### New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	Kanji	English
てんぷら	天ぷら	deep-fried vegetables or seafood
とんかつ	豚カツ	pork cutlet
なにが よろしいですか。*	何が よろしいですか。	What would you like?
かしこまりました。	かしこまりました。	Certainly; Very well.
aisu ti-	アイスティー	iced tea

\* more polite version of なにが いいですか ?

## □ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Imagine you are at a restaurant. Practice ordering food and a drink.

## □ More words you can write

You should practice writing these words a minimum of five times each. Not only will you be practicing the new hiragana but you will also learn new words.

おきゃくさん	a customer or guest	しゅじゅつ	surgery
じょうだん	a joke	じゅうたん	carpet
かいじゅう	a monster	はっぴょう	an announcement

## 10 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you don't know what they mean, we recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Supagetti–をください。
2. Menyu–をおねがいします。みずも おねがいします。
3. なにが いいですか。

## 10 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In this lesson we are starting a new sentence to build on. Watch it grow and transform as new concepts are introduced.

Sando をください。  
A sandwich, please.

## Vocabulary Groups

### M direction words

#### Progressive

みぎ  
ひだり  
うえ  
した  
きた  
ひがし  
みなみ  
にし

#### Kanji

右  
左  
上  
下  
北  
東  
南  
西

#### English

right  
left  
up  
down  
north  
east  
south  
west

### N things around the house II

#### Progressive

かさ  
いえ  
でんわ  
かぎ  
いす  
ごみばこ  
toire

#### Kanji

傘  
家  
電話  
鍵  
椅子  
ごみ箱  
トイレ

#### English

umbrella  
house  
telephone  
key  
chair  
trash can  
toilet

ごみばこ



かぎ



いえ



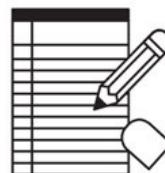
Lesson

**11**

Level ①

**Counting Objects**

Various counting units

**11****About This Lesson このレッスンについて****Before The Lesson**

1. Be able to write and read compound ひらがな.
2. Understand Japanese basic counting and how to ask for things.
3. Review vocabulary groups M and N.

**Lesson Goals**

1. Learn how to count various objects depending on their characteristics.

**From The Teachers**

1. Pay special attention to the counters taught in this lesson. You will sound strange if you mix them up. Also, if you are not strong in the area of counting, now would be the time to review the Pre-Lesson on counting.

**11****Explanation せつめい**

Counting things in Japanese is not quite the same as in English. In Japanese, things are counted differently based on their shape or classification. Wow, that *is* strange! ...Or so many people say. If you think about it, we have a similar system in English.

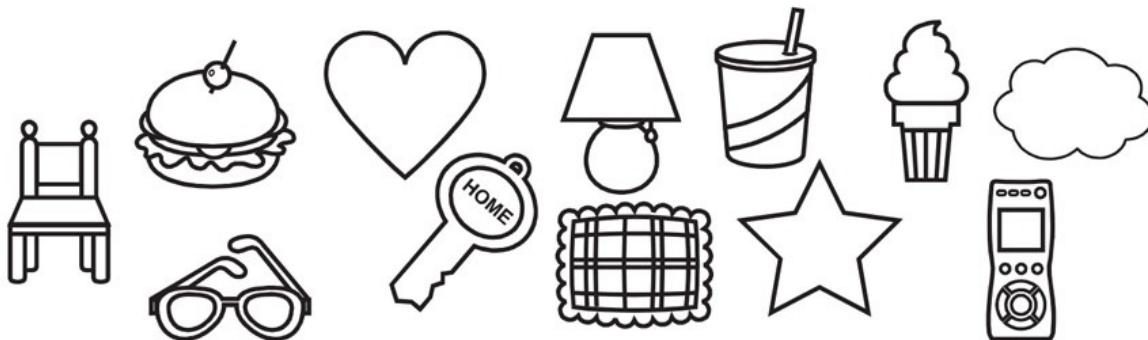
We also count things differently based on what the item is. For example, “one *slice* of pizza,” “two *head* of cattle,” “a *school* of fish” or “a *flock* of birds” are all things we say in English without batting an eye. In this lesson we will introduce four of the most commonly used Japanese counting systems.

## 11 Counters カウンター

How Many ?	General / Abstract Objects	Small / Round General Objects	Long / Cylindrical Objects	Thin and Flat Objects
いくつ ?	いくつ ?	なんこ ?	なんぼん ?	なんまい ?
1	ひとつ	いっこ	いっぽん	いちまい
2	ふたつ	にこ	にほん	にまい
3	みっつ	さんこ	さんぼん	さんまい
4	よっつ	よんこ	よんほん	よんまい
5	いつつ	ごこ	ごほん	ごまい
6	むっつ	ろっこ	ろっぽん	ろくまい
7	ななつ	ななこ	ななほん	ななまい
8	やつ	はっこ	はっぽん / はちほん	はちまい
9	ここ	きゅうこ	きゅうほん	きゅうまい
10	とお	じゅっこ じっこ	じゅっぽん じっぽん	じゅうまい
11	じゅういっこ	じゅういっこ	じゅういっぽん	じゅういちまい
12	じゅうにこ	じゅうにこ	じゅうにほん	じゅうにまい
13	じゅうさんこ	じゅうさんこ	じゅうさんぼん	じゅうさんまい
14	じゅうよんこ	じゅうよんこ	じゅうよんほん	じゅうよんまい
15	じゅうごこ	じゅうごこ	じゅうごほん	じゅうごまい
16	じゅうろっこ	じゅうろっこ	じゅうろっぽん	じゅうろっまい
17	じゅうななこ	じゅうななこ	じゅうななほん	じゅうななまい
18	じゅうはっこ	じゅうはっこ	じゅうはっぽん	じゅうはっまい
19	じゅうきゅうこ	じゅうきゅうこ	じゅうきゅうほん	じゅうきゅうまい
20	にじゅっこ にじっこ	にじゅっこ にじっこ	にじゅっぽん にじっぽん	にじゅっまい
100	ひやっこ	ひやっこ	ひやっぽん	ひやくまい
1000	せんこ	せんこ	せんぼん	せんまい

**NOTE:** As you can see, after ten items, each counter continues into infinity following the pattern of the first ten numbers and the basic rules of counting. After ten items, the いくつ counter follows the pattern of the なんこ counter.

### General / Abstract Objects いくつ



The いくつ counter is the most common and versatile counter. It can be used to count almost anything – physical objects as well as abstract objects, such as problems or ideas. It cannot be used to count people, animals, or animated living creatures, and is not normally used to count large objects such as airplanes. Many Japanese use this counter even though a more proper counter exists. Always try to use the correct counter to identify what you are counting, but when in doubt use this counter. This counter changes to the なんこ counter after 10.

### Round / General Objects なんこ



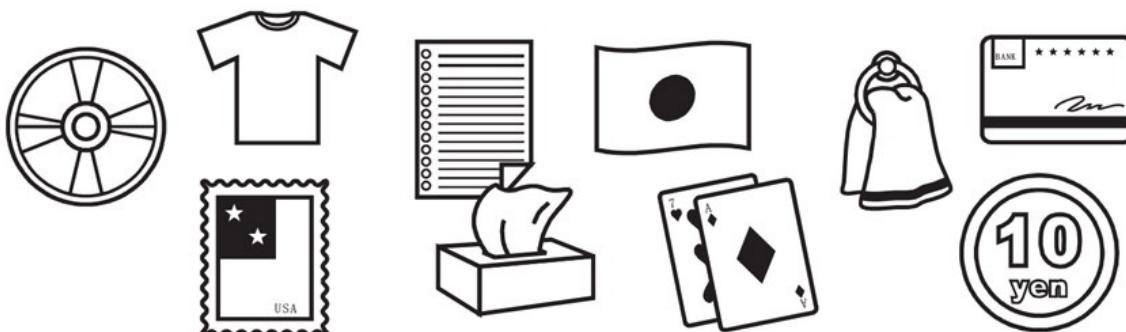
The なんこ counter is used when counting round objects such as fruit, balls, etc... The objects being counted do not have to be perfectly round. The なんこ counter can also be used as a general counter like いくつ. It cannot, however, be used to count abstract objects in the way that いくつ is used.

### Long / Cylindrical Objects なんぼん



The なんぼん counter is used to count objects that are long and cylindrical in shape, such as bottles of cola, pens, legs and flowers (due to the stem). It is also used to count some items that might not seem to be long or cylindrical, such as video cassettes, teeth, and numbers of flights. Don't be surprised to hear this counter in a variety of situations.

### Thin / Flat Objects なんまい



The なんまい counter is used to count objects that are thin and flat, such as paper, tickets, plates, and compact discs. It cannot be used to count books, magazines, etc. These use the published materials counter さつ.

## 11 New Words あたらしい ことば

### Progressive

いくつ

なんこ

なんぼん

### Kana

いくつ

なんこ

なんぼん

### Kanji

いくつ

何個

何本

### English

How many things?

How many round objects?

How many cylindrical objects?

なんまい	なんまい	何枚	How many thin and flat objects?
かみ	かみ	紙	paper
chiketto	チケット	チケット	tickets
はな	はな	花	flowers
はた	はた	旗	flag
ほし	ほし	星	star (in the sky)
karenda-	カレンダー	カレンダー	calendar

## 11 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ The counters and particles

In the previous lesson about ください and おねがいします, you learned that the object particle を follows the item being requested. However, this is only true for the object of a sentence and NOT the counter. No matter which counter is being used, particles are not necessary after the counters.

#### Examples

##### (general, abstract objects)

- |                 |                        |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| 1. ひとつください。     | One, please.           |
| 2. まくらを みつください。 | Three pillows, please. |
| 3. いすを いつつください。 | Five chairs, please.   |

##### (round, general objects)

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 4. よんこください。           | Four, please.        |
| 5. りんごを にこください。       | Two apples, please.  |
| 6. Orenji を じゅっこください。 | Ten oranges, please. |

##### (long, cylindrical objects)

- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 7. ろっぽんください。          | Six, please.           |
| 8. えんぴつを いっぽんください。    | One pencil, please.    |
| 9. Banana を ななほんください。 | Seven bananas, please. |

##### (thin, flat objects)

- |                       |                                       |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 10. よんまい ください。        | Four, please.                         |
| 11. Pizza を にまい ください。 | Two slices of pizza, please.          |
| 12. かみを ごひゃくまい ください。  | Five hundred pieces of paper, please. |

## □ More

あと means “more,” “else,” “in addition” and sometimes “other.” It is placed in front of numbered things in the following ways. It is okay to add は after あと.

### Example Q&A

1. あと いくら ですか。

How much more is it?

あと ごひゃくえん です。

It's five hundred yen more.

2. あとは どこの resutoran が おいしいですか。

What other restaurant is delicious?

わたしの hoteru の resutoran が おいしいです。

The restaurant in my hotel is delicious.

### Example Conversations

1. Conversation between friends.

A: なにが すきですか。

What do you like?

B: すしと pizza が すきです。

I like sushi and pizza.

A: あと、なにが すきですか。

What else do you like?

B: あとは、さしみが すきです。

In addition, I like sashimi.

2. Conversation between friends.

A: あとは なにが いいですか。

What else would you like?

B: みずと supu-n をください。

Some water and a spoon, please.

A: はい しょうしょう おまちください。

Please wait a few moments.

## 11

## Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. How many cups are there?

There are five cups.

There is one.

Koppu は いくつ ですか。

Koppu は いつつ です。

ひとつ です。

2. How many oranges are there?

There are six oranges.

There are three.

Orenji は なんこ / いくつ ですか。

Orenji は ろっこ / むっつ です。

みっつ です。/ さんこ です。

## 3. How many pencils are there?

There are two pencils.

There are 22 pencils.

There are ten.

えんぴつは なんばん ですか。

えんぴつは にほん です。

えんぴつは にじゅうにほん です。

じゅっぽん です。

## 4. How many tickets are there?

There are seven tickets.

There are 100 tickets.

There are twelve.

Chiketto は なんまい ですか。

Chiketto は ななまい です。

Chiketto は ひゃくまい です。

じゅうにまい です。

## 5. How many pink flowers are there?

There is one pink flower.

There are three.

Pinku のはなは なんばん ですか。

Pinku のはなは いっぽん です。

さんばん です。

## 6. How many purple stars are there?

There are 39 purple stars.

There are 70 purple stars.

むらさきの ほしは いくつ ですか。

むらさきの ほしは さんじゅうきゅうこ です。

むらさきの ほしは ななじゅっこ です。

## 7. What would you like?

Three slices of pizza please.

Some water and a banana please.

なにが いいですか。

Piza を さんまい ください。

みずと banana を いっぽん ください。

## 11 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

## 1. Karendo–は なんまい ですか。

ななじゅういちまい です。

Hya くにじゅうごまい です。

いちまん よんせんまい です。

## How many calendars are there?

There are 71.

There are 125.

There are 14,000.

## 2. Ko-ra は なんばん ですか。

はっぽん です。

よんほん です。

## How many colas are there?

There are eight.

There are four.

## 3. Ko-ra は あと なんばん ですか。

あと ろっぽん ください。

あと いっぽん ください。

## How many more cans of cola?

Six more cans, please.

One more can, please.

## 4. あとは いくつが いいですか。

あと ふたつ ください。

あと じゅうろっこ ください。

## How many more would you like?

Two more, please.

Sixteen more, please.

5. Banana は なんぼん ですか。

じゅうごほん です。

たぶん ろっぽん です。

How many bananas are there?

There are 15.

Maybe there are six.

6. Piza は なんまい ほしい ですか。

さんまい ほしい です。

Piza は ほしくない です。

How many pieces pizzas do you want?

I want three.

I don't want any pizza.

## 11

## Mini Conversations ミニ かいわ

### 1. Conversation at a ticket booth for a concert

A: Four tickets, please.

B: Okay.

A: Oh! Two more tickets, please.

B: Okay. Seven, right?

A: No, that's wrong. Six tickets, please.

A: Chiketto を よんまい ください。

B: はい。

A: あっ、あと にまい ください。

B: はい。ななまい ですね。

A: いいえ、ちがいます。chiketto を ろくまい ください。

### 2. Conversation at a drink stand at the beach

A: Please give me some cola.

B: How many?

A: Two, please.

A: Ko-ra を ください。

B: なんぼん ですか。

A: にほん ください。

## Hiragana: The Next Step

Congratulations on learning hiragana!

Here are some tips to help you reinforce what you have learned:

### Let's put hiragana in our daily lives!

Write words in hiragana on "post it" notes and then stick them on items around your house. You can even write しお and こしょう on your salt and pepper shakers using a permanent marker. This will enforce your skills even when you aren't thinking about it.



### Read manga!

Some manga (Japanese comics) and children's books will have small hiragana next to any kanji used in dialogue. When hiragana is used in this way it is called "furigana". Look for furigana when purchasing manga to help you study. It's like Japanese on training wheels!



### Keep on learning!

Your next step is to learn katakana! You have come this far, so keep up the momentum. We are sure you will also enjoy learning katakana in "Japanese From Zero!" Book 2.

## 11 Lesson Activities

### □ Japanese questions

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Write all the answers in hiragana (except for the katakana words).

1. うまの あしは なんぼん ですか。

---

2. Amerika の はたの ほしは なんこ ですか。

---

3. えんぴつが なんぼん ほしいですか。

---

4. Piza が なんまい ほしいですか。

---

### □ English questions

Translate then answer the following questions in Japanese. Write all your answers in hiragana.

1. How many white stars are there?



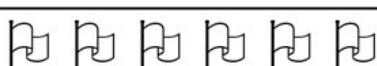
2. How many pencils are there?



3. How many fingers are there? (including thumbs!)



4. How many flags are there?



5. How many clocks are there? 

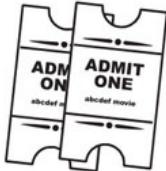
## □ Grammar drill

How would you ask for the following items? Write the sentences with おねがいします and ください. Make sure you use an appropriate counter and amount in each sentence.

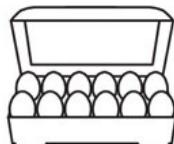
Ex.



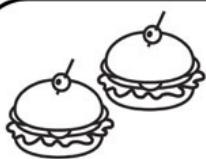
Keeki を みつ ください。  
Keeki を みつ おねがいします。



1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

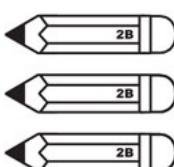


2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

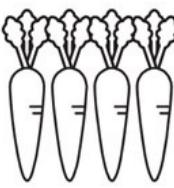


cheeseburgers

3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## □ Short dialogue

Jon and Masami are at a sushi bar.

Sushi chef: いらっしゃい。

Jon: すみません、いくらとはまちをください。

Sushi chef: はい！ そちらのおきゃくさんは？

まさみ: わたしはおみそしるをひとつとおちゃを  
おねがいします。きょうのおすすめはなんですか。

Sushi chef: そうですね。きょうはあまえびがおいしいです。

まさみ: じゃあ、それをひとつ、ください。

Jon: あと、えだまめもください。

まさみ: わたしもえだまめがほしいです。  
おさらをにまい、おねがいします。



Sushi chef: はい、わかりました！

### New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	Kanji	English
いらっしゃい	いらっしゃい	welcome (rough form of いらっしゃいませ)
いくら	いくら	salmon eggs
はまち	ハマチ	yellow tail fish
おきゃくさん	お客様	customer
おすすめ	お薦め	recommendation
あまえび	あまえび	sweet shrimp
えだまめ	枝豆	green soybeans
そちら	そちら	polite version of そっち (there)

## □ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Practice ordering things at a sushi bar.

## 11 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. Ko-ra を さんぽん ください。
2. りんごを じゅっこ おねがいします。
3. かみを ごまい ください。
4. いくつ ほしいですか。
5. あと こここのつ ください。

## 11 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it grow and transform each time new concepts are introduced.

**Sando を よっつ ください。**  
**Four sandwiches, please.**

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lesson:

Lesson 10: Sando を ください。

A sandwich, please.

## Vocabulary Groups

### O at school

#### Progressive

せんせい  
ほん  
じしょ  
おてあらい  
えんぴつ  
おんがく

#### Kanji

先生  
本  
辞書  
お手洗い  
鉛筆  
音楽

#### English

teacher  
book  
dictionary  
restroom  
pencil  
music

### P at the office, etc.

#### Progressive

けいたいでんわ  
おかね  
ko-hi-  
たばこ  
めがね  
pasokon  
no-to pasokon  
めいし

#### Kanji

携帯電話  
お金  
コーヒー  
たばこ  
めがね  
パソコン  
ノートパソコン  
名刺

#### English

cellular phone  
money  
coffee  
cigarettes  
glasses  
PC (computer)  
laptop computer  
business card

### Q insects

#### Progressive

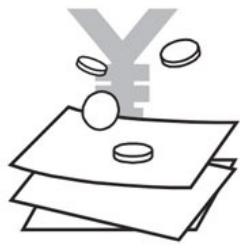
ごきぶり  
あり  
はえ

#### Kanji

ごきびり  
蟻  
蠅

#### English

cockroach  
ant  
house fly



おかね



コーヒー



パソコン

Lesson  
**12**  
 Level ①

## Japanese Verbs

Polite verb conjugation



Welcome to Japanese verbs. This is where Japanese becomes really fun! We will start out slowly with just four verbs and four forms. Learn them well and you should have no problem grasping the verb forms that follow.

### 12 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

#### Before The Lesson

1. Be able to write and read all ひらがな.
2. Review vocabulary group O, P and Q.

#### Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to conjugate verbs into the polite forms.
2. Learn how to use the particle に.

#### From The Teachers

1. The dictionary form of a verb is the most important form. Put effort into memorizing them and all other verb forms that come up in other lessons.

### 12 New Words あたらしい ことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
なにご	なにご	何語	what language?
なにじん	なにじん	何人	what nationality?
rosanzerusu	ロサンゼルス	ロサンゼルス	Los Angeles
rasu begasu	ラスベガス	ラスベガス	Las Vegas
shikago	シカゴ	シカゴ	Chicago
kariforunia	カリфорニア	カリфорニア	California
kanada	カナダ	カナダ	Canada
かんこく	かんこく	韓国	Korea

ちゅうごく	ちゅうごく	中国	China
ぎんこう	ぎんこう	銀行	bank
ふく	ふく	服	clothing, clothes
~し	~し	~市	~ City
~しうう	~しうう	~州	~ State
~けん	~けん	~県	~ Prefecture
~ご	~ご	~語	~ language
~じん	~じん	~人	~ nationality

## 12 New Phrases あたらしい かいわ

1. おひさしぶりです。 It has been a long time.
2. なにごが はなせますか。 What languages can you speak?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ が はなせます。 I can speak \_\_\_\_\_.

## 12 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ Polite versus informal speaking

In Japanese, it is common to use polite language with people you don't know, or who have higher social status than yourself. For example, when speaking to a stranger on the street or to your boss, you should use polite verb forms.

However, if you are talking to your family, friends, or people that are of lower or equal status than you, speaking informally will be more natural. Until your Japanese level becomes more advanced, we suggest that you stick to polite Japanese in order to form good speaking habits.

### □ Conjugating verbs into the polite form

The "dictionary form" of a verb is the only version that is in the dictionary. It is the most basic form of the verb without any conjugation. From this form of the verb, you can conjugate the verbs into many other forms using simple patterns. Let's look at the four verbs we will learn in this lesson:

Dictionary Form	English Verb	Verb Type
いく	to go	regular
くる	to come	irregular
かえる	to return, go back, go home, come back, come home etc.	regular
わかる	to understand, know	regular

To conjugate the dictionary forms into other forms, the hiragana chart will be useful. This is a shortened chart – not all the hiragana are listed.

ら	ま	ば	な	た	さ	が	か	あ	あ form
り	み	び	に	ち	し	ぎ	き	い	い form
る	む	ぶ	ぬ	つ	す	ぐ	く	う	う form
れ	め	べ	ね	て	せ	げ	け	え	え form
ろ	も	ぼ	の	と	そ	ご	こ	お	お form

### The forms

Notice how the rows on the chart above have been labeled あ, い, う, え, お form. You may have noticed that every new verb in this lesson ends with a hiragana in the う form. This isn't just a coincidence - because *all* verbs in the Japanese language in the dictionary form end with う form hiragana.

For example, the verb いく (to go) ends in く. くる (to come), わかる (to understand), and かえる (to return) all end in る. Both く and る are う form hiragana.

**Verb types**

Each verb in this lesson has been labeled as regular or irregular. The majority of Japanese verbs are regular verbs. We call them “regular” because there are so many of them and they all follow the exact same conjugation pattern.

Generally, irregular verbs do not follow any logical rule. The patterns of irregular verbs must be memorized. Luckily there are only a small amount of irregular verbs.

**Making the conversion**

To make the polite versions of regular verbs, the *final* hiragana of the dictionary form needs to be changed into the り form.

Step 1: Convert the last hiragana into the り form.

わ か る → わ か り  
か え る → か え り  
い く → い き

Look back at the hiragana chart at the beginning of this lesson. See the る?  
Move straight up the column to the り. The first step of conjugating regular verbs into their polite forms is to switch their final hiragana into the り form.

Remember that this pattern will NOT work for irregular verbs such as 来る (to come), but only for regular verbs.

In "Japanese From Zero!" Book 2 you will learn how to use the hiragana chart to make more verb conjugations.

After changing the dictionary form into the い form, all you need to do is add one of the following endings to complete the verb:

Polite verb endings			
Present / Future Positive	Present / Future Negative	Past Positive	Past Negative
~ます will~, do~, am going to~	~ません won't~, don't~	~ました did~	~ませんでした didn't~

Step 2: Add a stem.

わかり + }	ます
かえり + }	ません
いき + }	ました
	ませんでした

Now let's conjugate each of the regular verbs in this lesson.

わかります	do understand
わかりません	do not understand, will not understand
わかりました	understood, did understand
わかりませんでした	didn't understand
いきます	will go, do go
いきません	won't go, don't go
いきました	went
いきませんでした	didn't go
かえります	will return, do return
かえりません	will not return, do not return
かえりました	returned
かえりませんでした	didn't return

The only verb in this lesson that isn't regular is くる (come). Remember: irregular verbs don't follow the chart we showed you earlier - their patterns have to be memorized.

くる is conjugated as follows:

きます	will come, do come
きません	won't come, don't come
きました	came
ませんでした	didn't come

## □ Location particles に and へ

Now that we have verbs to get you moving, where are you going? That's what location particles are for.

に and へ (although written as へ, it's pronounced as え) are both location and destination particles. They are placed after locations. In English, に and へ can both mean "to."

There are differences where に and へ are used. に is used when going to an exact location, as in, "I am going to France" (Furansu に いきます). The particle へ is used when going in a general direction, as in "I am going to the south" (みなみへ いきます).

In modern Japan most Japanese people freely mix に and へ without regard to grammatical rules. It would not be wrong to say Furansu へ いきます. The key point to remember is that locations require a location marker. In order to prevent confusion, from this point on we will use に as the standard location and destination marker.

### に as a location marker

#### Examples

とうきょうに  
がっこうに  
ぎんこうに  
にほんに

to Tokyo  
to school  
to the bank  
to Japan

Now let's combine locations with the verbs.

### Example Sentences

- |                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. とうきょうに いきます。    | I am going to Tokyo.     |
| 2. ぎんこうに いきました。    | I went to the bank.      |
| 3. がっこうに いきませんでした。 | I didn't go to school.   |
| 4. おおさかに いきません。    | I am not going to Osaka. |

## □ Time particle に

に is also used to mark time in a sentence. When used with time it can mean "in", "on", or "at".

### に as a time marker

#### Examples

いちがつに	<u>in</u> January
かようびに	<u>on</u> Tuesday
ろくじに	<u>at</u> six o'clock

Now let's combine times with the verbs.

### Example Sentences

- |                 |                               |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. いちがつに いきます。  | I am going <u>in</u> January. |
| 2. かようびに いきました。 | I went <u>on</u> Tuesday.     |

## □ Time particle usage with きょう、せんしゅう、らいねん etc.

You do not need to add a time particle to words like きょう (today), あした (tomorrow) etc. These words are not "specific times" like "Monday" or "January". Adding に after them would be as strange as saying "I am going ON tomorrow" or "I didn't go ON yesterday".

This rule is the same for words such as "this week", "next month", "last year", etc.

An easy way to remember this rule is: "If you don't use IN, ON, or AT in English, then don't use に in Japanese." Look at the following examples:

### Example Sentences

- |                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. らいしゅう いきます。    | I am going next week.     |
| 2. きのう いきました。     | I went yesterday.         |
| 3. きょねん いきませんでした。 | I didn't go last year.    |
| 4. こんしゅう いきません。   | I am not going this week. |

## □ Sentence structure using verbs

Verbs always come last in Japanese sentences. And just like か is added to です to make a question, you can add か after the conjugated verb to make a question. In the following examples we will use time, location, and question words.

### Example Q&A

1. どこに いきますか。

Where are you going (to)?

にほんに いきます。

I am going to Japan.

2. いえに かえりましたか。

Did you return home?

いいえ、ともだちのいえに いきました。

No, I went to a friend's house.

3. いつ きますか。

When are you coming?

さんがつに いきます。

I will go in March.

4. なんにちに いきますか。

What day of the month are you going?

ふつかに いきます。

I am going on the 2<sup>nd</sup>.

5. いつ にほんに いきますか。

When are you going to Japan?

らいねんの いちがつに いきます。

I am going next January.

6. きのう、がっこうに いきましたか。

Did you go to school yesterday?

いいえ、いきませんでした。でも、あした いきます。

No, I didn't go. But I will go tomorrow.

## Using the verb わかる

When using わかる to say that you understand something, you must use が to mark the thing that you understand.

### Example Sentences

- |                     |                                |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. にほんごが わかります。     | I understand Japanese.         |
| 2. にほんごが わかりません。    | I don't understand Japanese.   |
| 3. かれは えいごが わかりません。 | He doesn't understand English. |

## Languages and nationalities

By adding ご (language) and じん (people) after a country name, you can create languages and nationalities. For example, Spain in Japanese is "supein". To say "Spanish language," you say supein ご. Russia in Japanese is "roshia". To say someone is Russian, you say roshia じん.

English	Country	People	Language
Japan	にほん	にほんじん	にほんご
Korea	かんこく	かんこくじん	かんこくご
China	ちゅうごく	ちゅうごくじん	ちゅうごくご
Spain	supein	supein じん	supein ご

Note: This works for many countries but not all.

English	Country	People	Language
America	amerika	amerika じん	えいご
Phillipines	firipin	firipin じん	tagaragu ご
Mexico	mekishiko	mekishiko じん	supein ご

### Example Sentences

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Furansu ごが わかりますか。      | Do you understand French? |
| 2. Jon さんは kanada じん です。   | Jon is Canadian.          |
| 3. ようこさんは supein ごが はなせます。 | Youko can speak Spanish.  |

## 12 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

1. When are you coming back?

I will return in May.  
I will return on the 22<sup>nd</sup>.  
I will return next week.

いつ かえりますか。

5 がつに かえります。  
22 に ちに かえります。  
らいしゅう かえります。

**2. Are you going?**

Yes, I am going.

No, I am not going.

いきますか。

はい、いきます。

いいえ、いきません。

**3. Where are you going?**

I am going to Miyazaki City.

I am going to a friend's house.

I am going to the Hyougo Prefecture.

どこに いきますか。

みやざきしに いきます。

ともだちの いえに いきます。

ひょうごけんに いきます。

**4. Are you going to Tokyo?**

Yes, I am going to Tokyo.

No, I am not going to Tokyo.

とうきょうに いきますか。

はい、とうきょうに いきます。

いいえ、とうきょうに いきません。

**5. Are you coming to the party?**

Yes, I am going.

No, I am not going.

Pa-ti-に きますか。

はい、いきます。

いいえ、いきません。

**6. Did you go to Japan?**

Yes, I went to Japan.

No, I didn't go to Japan.

にほんに いきましたか。

はい、にほんに いきました。

いいえ、にほんに いきませんでした。

**7. When are you coming back?**

I will return tomorrow.

I will return on Sunday.

いつ かえりますか。

あした かえります。

にちようびに かえります。

**8. Will you come (over) tomorrow?**

Yes, I will go.

No, I won't go.

No, I will go the day after tomorrow.

あした、きますか。

はい、いきます。

いいえ、いきません。

いいえ、あさって いきます。

**9. When did you return to Canada?**

I didn't return.

I came back on Wednesday.

いつ kanada に かえりましたか。

かえりませんでした。

すいようびに かえりました。

**10. What nationality are you?**

I am Mexican.

I am Korean.

I am Chinese.

I am American.

なにじん ですか。

Mekishiko じん です。

かんこくじん です。

ちゅうごくじん です。

Amerika じん です。

## 12 Q&A しつもんと こたえ J→E

1. ふるたさんは ちゅうごくごが わかりますか？

Does Mr. Furuta understand Chinese?

いいえ。でも、かんこくごが わかります。

No. But he understands Korean.

2. なにごが はなせますか。

What languages do you speak?

Supein ごと えいごが はなせます。

I can speak Spanish and English.

ちゅうごくごと かんこくごと にほんごが はなせます。

I can speak Chinese and Korean and Japanese.

## 12 Mini Conversations ミニ かいわ J→E

### 1. Conversation between friends

A: どこに いきますか。

B: おじいさんの いえに いきます。

A: おじいさんの いえは どこですか。

B: Rasu begasu です。

A: Where are you going?

B: I am going to my grandfather's house.

A: Where is your grandfather's house?

B: Las Vegas.

### 2. Conversation on the phone between friends

A: いつ amerika に かえりますか。

B: すいようびに かえります。

A: あなたの おかあさんも かえりますか。

B: はい、おかあさんも かえります。

A: When will you come back to America?

B: I'll return on Wednesday.

A: Will your mother also come back?

B: Yes, my mother will also return.

### 3. Conversation between friends who haven't met in a while

A: おひさしぶりです。  
B: いつかえりましたか。  
A: おととい かえりました。

A: It's been a long time.  
B: When did you return?  
A: I came back the day before yesterday.

### 4. Conversation between friends

A: だれが pa-ti-に きますか。  
B: よしこさんと けいこさんが きます。  
A: よしこさんと けいこさんは だれですか。  
B: わたしの ともだちです。

A: Who is coming to the party?  
B: Yoshiko and Keiko are coming.  
A: Who are Yoshiko and Keiko?  
B: They're my friends.

### 5. Conversation between two co-workers

A: いつ amerika に いきましたか。  
B: Amerika に いきませんでした。  
A: じゃ、どこに いきましたか。  
B: かんこくに いきました。

A: When did you go to America?  
B: I didn't go to America.  
A: Well then, where did you go?  
B: I went to Korea.

### 6. Conversation at work

A: なにごが はなせますか。  
B: ちゅうごくごと えいごと ほんごが はなせます。  
A: すごいですね。なにじんですか。  
B: ほんじんです。

A: What languages can you speak?  
B: I can speak Chinese, English, and Japanese.  
A: That's amazing. What nationality are you?  
B: I'm Japanese.

## 12 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

- ① ここは amerika の shikago し です。
- ② まりさんは じゅうがつ みっかに にほんに いきました。
- ③ きのう shikago しに かえりました。
- ④ まりさんと ともだちの よしこさんは あした pa-ti-に いきます。
- ⑤ まりさんの ふくは しろです。
- ⑥ よしこさんは orenji です。
- ⑦ あしたは harowi-n (Halloween) です。
- ⑧ まりさんは pa-ti-が だいすき です。
- ⑨ くがつに よしこさんのおとうさんの たんじょうび pa-ti-に いきました。
- ⑩ らいねんの しちがつ とおかに かんこくに いきます。



## 12 Lesson Activities

### □ Grammar drill

Fill in the blanks with appropriate verb forms.

Dictionary Form	Polite Forms			
	Present / Future		Past	
	positive	negative	positive	negative
いく	いきます			
くる		きません		
かえる			かえりました	
わかる				わかりませんでした

### □ Substitution drill

Replace the underlined word with the words provided.

Ex. あした kanada に いきます。

→ Japan      あした にほんに いきます。

1. きょう ぎんこう に いきません。

→ school \_\_\_\_\_

→ McDonald's \_\_\_\_\_

→ friend's house \_\_\_\_\_

2. たなかさんは、おととい とうきょうに かえりました。

→ yesterday \_\_\_\_\_

→ last Friday \_\_\_\_\_

→ 5<sup>th</sup> of last month \_\_\_\_\_

3. やまもとさんは、にほんに かえりませんでした。

→ America \_\_\_\_\_

→ Los Angeles \_\_\_\_\_

→ Chicago \_\_\_\_\_

4. やまださんは、さんかくに ここに きます。

→ 2<sup>nd</sup> of next month \_\_\_\_\_

→ next Saturday \_\_\_\_\_

→ May of next year \_\_\_\_\_

5. おかあさんの いえに いきます。

→ won't go \_\_\_\_\_

→ went \_\_\_\_\_

→ didn't go \_\_\_\_\_

6. たむらさんのおとうさんは、にほんごが わかります。

→ English \_\_\_\_\_

→ computer \_\_\_\_\_

→ hiragana and katakana \_\_\_\_\_

## □ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson.

1. まりさんは きのう どこに かえりましたか。

---

2. まりさんの ともだちの なまえは なんですか。

3. きょうは なんがつ なんにち ですか。

4. まりさんは くがつに どこに いきましたか。

5. まりさんは らいねん どこに いきますか。

6. ここは どこですか。

7. まりさんは はちがつに どこに いきましたか。

## □ Short dialogue

Mr. Tanaka sees Ms. Smith (Sumisu) on the street and they start a conversation.

**Sumisu さん:** たなかさん、こんにちは。

**たなかさん:** Sumisu さん、こんにちは。きょうはあついですね。

**Sumisu さん:** はい、あついです。

**たなかさん:** どこにいきますか。

**Sumisu さん:** いまから①がっこうにいきます。

**たなかさん:** ②なんのがっこうですか。

**Sumisu さん:** ③にほんごがっこうです。

**たなかさん:** そうですか。わたしはいまから④しごとにいきます。

### New words and expressions in the dialogue

Progressive	Kanji+	English
いまから	今から	from now / from now on
なんの？	何の？	What? Which? What kind of?
きょうはあついですね。	今日は暑いですね。	Today sure is hot.

## □ Short dialogue activities

Practice reading the above dialogue in pairs.

Substitute ①-④ with the following words and try the conversation again.

- A) ① Movies (えいが)
- ② What movie is it?
- ③ Any movie
- ④ I'm going to the bank



- B) ① Party  
② What (kind of) party is it?  
③ school party  
④ I'm going home
- C) ① McDonald's  
② Where is it?  
③ It's over there  
④ I'm going to school

## □ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversation into Japanese.

1.

**Ryouhei:** I am going to China.  
**Nobuko:** I went last year. When are you going?  
**Ryouhei:** On the 20<sup>th</sup> of next month.  
**Nobuko:** When will you return?  
**Ryouhei:** Maybe on the 30<sup>th</sup>.  
**Nobuko:** That's nice.

Ryouhei:

Nobuko:

Ryouhei:

Nobuko:

Ryouhei:

Nobuko:

**12 Drill ドリル**

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. どこに いきますか。
2. いつ かえりますか。
3. きんようびに いきました。
4. にほんごが わかりますか。
5. なんがつに いきますか。

**12 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり**

In this lesson we are starting a new sentence to build on. Watch it grow and transform as new concepts are introduced.

あした にほんに いきます。  
Tomorrow, I am going to Japan.

Lesson  
**13**  
 Level ①

## Telling Time

Hours and minutes



### 13 About This Lesson このレッスンについて

#### Before The Lesson

1. Review all of the vocabulary groups.
2. Know how to conjugate verbs into the polite forms.

#### Lesson Goals

1. Learn how to tell time in Japanese.
2. Learn how to use から (from) and まで (until).

#### From The Teachers

1. から (from) and まで (until) are used for both time and location and are very handy particles. Make sure you take the time to learn how they are used.
2. Review everything you have learned in this book. It sets the stage for Level 2. Good Luck!

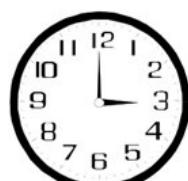
### 13 New Words あたらしいことば

Progressive	Kana	Kanji	English
なんじ	なんじ	何時	what time?
はん	はん	半	half past (:30)
ごぜん	ごぜん	午前	AM (also means morning)
ごご	ごご	午後	PM (also means afternoon)
くうこう	くうこう	空港	airport
じゅぎょう	じゅぎょう	授業	class
arubaito	アルバイト	アルバイト	part-time job
やすみ	やすみ	休み	day off, break

## 13 Time じかん

### o'clock - じ

one o'clock	いちじ	一時	seven o'clock	しちじ	七時
two o'clock	にじ	二時	eight o'clock	はちじ	八時
three o'clock	さんじ	三時	nine o'clock	くじ	九時
four o'clock	よじ	四時	ten o'clock	じゅうじ	十時
five o'clock	ごじ	五時	eleven o'clock	じゅういちじ	十一時
six o'clock	ろくじ	六時	twelve o'clock	じゅうにじ	十二時



さんじ



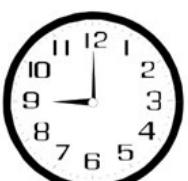
しちじ



よじ



じゅういちじ



くじ

### minutes - ふん, ぶん

1 minute	いっふん	一分
2 minutes	にふん	二分
3 minutes	さんぶん	三分
4 minutes	よんぶん	四分
5 minutes	ごふん	五分
6 minutes	ろっふん	六分
7 minutes	ななふん	七分
8 minutes	はっふん / はちふん	八分
9 minutes	きゅうふん	九分
10 minutes	じゅつぶん / じっぶん	十分
11 minutes	じゅういっふん	十一分
12 minutes	じゅうにふん	十二分
13 minutes	じゅうさんぶん	十三分
14 minutes	じゅうよんぶん	十四分
15 minutes	じゅうごふん	十五分
16 minutes	じゅうろっふん	十六分

17 minutes	じゅうななふん	十七分
18 minutes	じゅうはっふん / じゅうはちふん	十八分
19 minutes	じゅうきゅうふん	十九分
20 minutes	にじゅっふん / にじっふん	二十分
25 minutes	にじゅうごふん	二十五分
30 minutes	さんじゅっふん / さんじっふん	三十分
35 minutes	さんじゅうごふん	三十五分
40 minutes	よんじゅっふん / よんじっふん	四十分
45 minutes	よんじゅうごふん	四十五分
50 minutes	ごじゅっふん / ごじっふん	五十分
55 minutes	ごじゅうごふん	五十五分
60 minutes	ろくじゅっふん / ろくじっふん	六十分

				
しちじ よんぶん	じゅうじ はっふん	くじ じゅういっふん	よじ よんじゅっふん	しちじ にじゅうごふん

## 13 Grammar ぶんぽう

### □ AM and PM

ごぜん means both morning and AM ごご means both afternoon and PM. They are always placed in front of the time.

#### Examples

- |                    |          |
|--------------------|----------|
| 1. ごぜん ごじ          | 5:00 AM  |
| 2. ごぜん じゅうにじ じゅっふん | 12:10 AM |
| 3. ごご ろくじ          | 6:00 PM  |
| 4. ごご しちじ いっふん     | 7:01 PM  |
| 5. ごご いちじ よんじゅうごふん | 1:45 PM  |

## □ Half past

はん means half past. It always comes after the hour.

### Examples

- |                   |       |
|-------------------|-------|
| 1. じゅうじ <u>はん</u> | 10:30 |
| 2. さんじ <u>はん</u>  | 3:30  |
| 3. にじ <u>はん</u>   | 2:30  |

### Example sentences

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. にじはんに いきます。         | I am going at 2:30.      |
| 2. しちはんに かえります。        | I will return at 7:30.   |
| 3. ともだちは じゅうじはんに きました。 | My friend came at 10:30. |

## □ Using the particle から

から means “from” or “since,” depending on the context. It comes after a time or location to say “from this time” or “from this location”. It is used much like its English equivalent.

### から with time

#### Examples

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. なんじ <u>から</u>   | from what time? |
| 2. はちがつ <u>から</u>  | from August     |
| 3. いつ <u>から</u>    | from when?      |
| 4. さんじはん <u>から</u> | from 3:30       |
| 5. げつようび <u>から</u> | from Monday     |

### から with location

#### Examples

- |                      |                            |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. どこ <u>から</u>      | from where                 |
| 2. あそこ <u>から</u>     | from that place over there |
| 3. にほん <u>から</u>     | from Japan                 |
| 4. しごと <u>から</u>     | from work                  |
| 5. ともだちのいえ <u>から</u> | from a friend's house      |

**Example Q&A**

1. なんじから いきますか。  
ごじから いきます。

From what time will you go?

I will go from five o'clock.

2. しごとは なんじから ですか。  
しちじはんから です。

From what time is your work?

It's from 7:30.

3. どこから きましたか。  
あおもりけんから きました。  
みやざきしから きました。

Where did you come from?

I came from Aomori Prefecture.

I came from Miyazaki City.

4. いつ ほんから かえりますか。  
あした かえります。

When will you return from Japan?

I will return tomorrow.

5. なつは きょうからですか。  
いいえ、あさってからです。

Is summer from today?

(Does summer start today?)

No, it is from the day after tomorrow.

**□ Using the particle まで**

まで means “until”, “up until”, or “as far as”. It comes after a time or location to say “until this time” or “until this location”. When まで is used with location, the location is the final destination. It can also mean “up until to” or just “to”. Remember that まで and に are different. In most cases, に can be thought of as a single destination marker and まで can be thought of as a final destination marker.

**まで with time****Examples**

1. なんじ まで
2. いつ まで
3. さんじ まで
4. いちがつ まで
5. きょう まで

- until what time?
- until when?
- until three o'clock
- until January
- until today

**まで with location****Examples**

1. とうきょう まで
2. どこ まで
3. しごと まで

- until Tokyo
- until where
- until work

**Example Q&A**

- |                                  |                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. どこまでいきますか。<br>ほっかいどうまでいきます。   | <u>Up until</u> where (how far) are you going?<br>I am going <u>to</u> (as far as) Hokkaido.   |
| 2. しごとはなんじまでですか。<br>しちじはんまでです。   | <u>Until</u> what time is your work?<br>It's <u>until</u> 7:30.                                |
| 3. どこまでいきましたか。<br>あおもりけんまでいきました。 | <u>Up until</u> where (how far) did you go?<br>I went <u>to</u> (as far as) Aomori Prefecture. |
| 4. がっこうはなんじまでですか。<br>さんじはんまでです。  | <u>Until</u> what time is school?<br>It's <u>until</u> 3:30.                                   |

**13 Mini Conversations ミニ かいわ J→E****1. Conversation between co-workers**

- A: しごとはなんじからなんじまでですか。  
 B: ごぜんはちじからごごごじまでです。  
 A: いつかえりますか。  
 B: ごじはんにかえります。

- A: From what time until what time is your work?  
 B: It's from 8 AM until 5 PM.  
 A: When will you return home?  
 B: I will return at 5:30.

**2. Conversation between friends**

- A: ふゆはいつからいつまでですか。  
 B: ふゆはじゅうがつからにがつまでです。  
 A: ちがいます。  
 B: ごめんなさい。ふゆはじゅうにがつからさんがつまでです。

- A: From when until when is winter?  
 B: Winter is from November until February.  
 A: That's wrong.  
 B: Sorry. Winter is from December until March.

### 3. Conversation between friends

A: きょう、どこから どこまで いきますか。  
B: なごやしから ひめじしまで いきます。  
A: でんしゃは なんじですか。  
B: じゅういちじ よんじゅうさんぶん です。

A: From where to where are you going today?  
B: I will go from Nagoya City to Himeji City.  
A: What time is the train?  
B: It's at 11:43.

### 4. Conversation between brothers

A: おかあさんは いつ きますか。  
B: らいしゅうの どようびに きます。  
A: なんじに?  
B: ごぜん しちじに。

A: When will mother come?  
B: She will come next Saturday.  
A: At what time?  
B: At 7 AM.

### 5. Conversation between friends

A: Pa-ti-は なんじからなんじまで ですか。  
B: ごご ろくじから ごぜん いちじまで です。  
A: わかりました。 ありがとう。

A: From what time until what time is the party?  
B: It's from 6 PM until 1 AM.  
A: Okay. Thanks.

### 6. Conversation between friends

A: なんじの ひこうき ですか。  
B: ひこうきは ごごはちじ じゅうななふん です。  
A: くうこうに なんじに いきますか。  
B: ろくじはんに いきます。

A: What time is your flight? ( ひこうき can mean "flight" and "plane" )  
B: The plane (my flight) is 8:17 PM.  
A: What time are you going to the airport?  
B: I'm going at 6:30.

## 7. Conversation between neighbors

A: Kurisumasu の pa-ti-は いつですか。  
 B: らいしゅうの どようびの しちじからです。  
 A: なんじまでですか。  
 B: たぶん じゅうにじまでです。

A: When is the Christmas party?  
 B: It starts at seven o'clock next Saturday.  
 A: What time does it end?  
 B: Maybe until twelve o'clock.

## 13 Q&A しつもんと こたえ E→J

- |                                        |                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1. What time is it?</b>             | なんじですか。<br>にじです。<br>ろくじ じゅうにふんです。                                  |
| <b>2. What time was it?</b>            | なんじでしたか。<br>じゅうにじでした。<br>さんじでした。<br>よじでした。                         |
| <b>3. From what time is your work?</b> | あなたの しごとは なんじから ですか。<br>わたしの しごとは はちじから です。<br>わたしの しごとは しちじから です。 |
| <b>4. What time are you going?</b>     | なんじに いきますか。<br>さんじに いきます。<br>いきません。                                |
| <b>5. What time will you go back?</b>  | なんじに かえりますか。<br>ろくじはんに かえります。<br>かえりません。                           |
| <b>6. What time did you come here?</b> | ここに なんじに きましたか。<br>よじ じゅうごふんに きました。<br>きのう きました。                   |
| <b>7. Until when is your break?</b>    | やすみは いつまで ですか。                                                     |

My break until August.  
It's until next week.

やすみは はちがつまでです。  
らいしゅうまでです。

8. Since when have you liked Japanese?

I have liked it since I was fifteen years old.  
I have liked it since last year.

いつから にほんごが すき でしたか。  
じゅうごさいから すきでした。  
きょねんから すきでした。

## 13 Reading Comprehension どっかい

Read the sentences below. Use the information to answer the reading comprehension questions later in this lesson.

- ① ここは にほんごの がっこうです。
- ② ここに Samu (Sam) さんは ごぜん じゅうじに きました。
- ③ Jon さんは じゅうじ じゅうごふんに きました。
- ④ きょうの じゅぎょうは じゅうじはんから ごご いちじまでです。
- ⑤ Samu さんは にじに いえに かえります。
- ⑥ ごご よじに しごとに いきます。
- ⑦ Samu さんの しごとは よじはんから ごぜん いちじはんまでです。
- ⑧ Samu さんの しごとは hoteru の しごとです。
- ⑨ Jon さんは にじはんに supein ごのがっこうに いきます。
- ⑩ Supein ごのがっこうは さんじまでです。
- ⑪ いえに ろくじに かえります。
- ⑫ ごご はちじから arubaito です。
- ⑬ しちじ ごじゅうごふんに いきます。
- ⑭ Arubaito は じゅうにじまでです。
- ⑮ Jon さんの arubaito は makudonarudo です。

## 13 Lesson Activities

### □ Drill

Write the time shown on each clock in Japanese.



1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_\_\_

6. \_\_\_\_\_



7. \_\_\_\_\_

8. \_\_\_\_\_

9. \_\_\_\_\_

### □ Question and answer

Answer the following questions as if they were being asked to you directly. Write all the answers in hiragana.

- しごと / がっこうは なんじからですか。

---

2. なんじに しごと / がっこうに いきますか。

---

3. なんようびに しごと / がっこうに いきますか。

---

4. なんじに いえに かえりますか。

---

5. いま、なんじですか。

---

6. にほんごの じゅぎょうは なんじから なんじまで ですか。

---

7. あなたの にほんごのせんせいは だれですか。

---

8. ふゆは なんがつから なんがつまで ですか。 (December to February)

---

9. なつは なんがつから なんがつまで ですか。 (June to September)

---

## □ Reading comprehension questions

Answer the following questions about the reading comprehension in this lesson. Write all the answers in hiragana (except for the katakana words).

1. ここは どこですか。

---

2. だれが にほんごの がっこうに じゅうじに きましたか。

---

3. きょうの じゅぎょうは いつですか。

---

4. Samuさんの しごとは なんじから なんじまでですか。

---

5. Samuさんは いえに なんじに かえりましたか。

---

6. Jonさんの arubaito は なんじから なんじまでですか。

---

7. Jonさんは なんじに にほんごのがっこうに きましたか。

---

8. Jonさんは にじはんに どこに いきますか。

---

## □ Japanese translation

Translate the following conversations into English.

1.

Aさん: いつから しごとですか。  
Bさん: にがつ ようかから です。  
Aさん: しごとは なんじから なんじまで ですか。  
Bさん: ごぜん はちじから ごご よじまで です。

2.

Aさん: いま なんじですか。  
Bさん: よじ にじゅっはん です。  
Aさん: よじはんに いえに かえります。  
Bさん: いえは どこですか。  
Aさん: あそこ です。

3.

Aさん: あしたから にほんに かえります。  
Bさん: いつまでですか。  
Aさん: はちがつ じゅうごに ちまで です。  
Bさん: そうですか。 いいですね。

**□ English translation**

Translate the following conversations into Japanese.

1.

Mr. A: When did you come here?

Ms. B: I came at nine.

Mr. A: Where is your friend?

Ms. B: My friend didn't come.

Mr. A: Where is your friend now?

Ms. B: He is at home now.

2.

Mrs. A: What time is your airplane?

Mr. B: It's 10:30 a.m.

Mrs. A: What time are you going to the airport?

Mr. B: I'll go at 9:00.

Mrs. A: Got it.

3.

Mr. A: From what time is your part time job?

Mr. B: It's from 1:00 p.m.

Mr. A: Do you like your part time job?

Mr. B: No, I don't like it.

## □ Particle drill

Fill in the blanks with appropriate particles.

1.わたし \_\_\_\_\_しごと \_\_\_\_\_はちじ \_\_\_\_\_ごじ \_\_\_\_\_です。

2.せんげつ \_\_\_\_\_じゅうごにち \_\_\_\_\_もくようびでした。

3.なんじ \_\_\_\_\_いえ \_\_\_\_\_かえります \_\_\_\_\_?

4.やまださん \_\_\_\_\_くるま \_\_\_\_\_しろ \_\_\_\_\_gure-です。

5.いぬ \_\_\_\_\_すきです。でも、ねこ \_\_\_\_\_きらいです。

6.あたらしいじてんしゃ \_\_\_\_\_ほしいです。

7.どれ \_\_\_\_\_たなかさん \_\_\_\_\_ほんです\_\_\_\_\_?

8.かようび \_\_\_\_\_とうきょう \_\_\_\_\_いきます。

9. Hanba-ga- \_\_\_\_\_ poteto \_\_\_\_\_おねがいします。

Ko-ra \_\_\_\_\_ (also) おねがいします。

## □ Short dialogue

Mr. Hashimoto is talking to Mr. Watanabe about his plans for the weekend.

わたなべさん: はしもとさん、あしたも はちじから しごとですか。

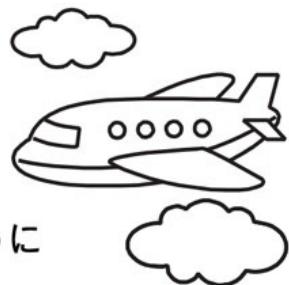
はしもとさん: いいえ、あしたは やすみです。

わたなべさん: いいですね。あしたは どこに いきますか。

はしもとさん: あしたは おおさかに いきます。

わたなべさん: ひこうきですか。

はしもとさん: はい。くじの ひこうきです。くうこうに  
はちじに いきます。



わたなべさん: そうですか。いつ かえりますか。

はしもとさん: らいしゅうの かようびに とうきょうに かえります。

## □ Short dialogue activities

1. Practice reading the dialogue in pairs.
2. Talk about your weekend plans.
  - Use the new verbs: ~に いきます / きます / かえります

## 13 Drill ドリル

Translate the following sentences. If you're not sure what they mean, we recommended that you review the lesson up to this point before continuing.

1. なんじに いきますか。
2. でんしゃは なんじですか。
3. がっこうは いちじから はちじまで です。
4. あなたの しごとは なんじから ですか。
5. ごぜん ろくじにくうこうに いきます。

## 13 Sentence Building ぶんのつくり

In each lesson we will build on a previous sentence. Watch it transform each time new concepts are introduced.

あした、ごご さんじに にほんに いきます。  
Tomorrow I am going to Japan at 3 p.m.

Compare how the sentence has changed from the prior lesson:

Lesson 12: あした、ごご さんじに にほんに いきます。  
Tomorrow I am going to Japan.

# APPENDICES

**Everyday Phrases**

**Last Names**

**Girls' Given Names**

**Boys' Given Names**

**Answer Key**

**English Glossary**

**Ro-maji Glossary**

**Kana Glossary**

**Japan Map**

**Everyday Phrases****A Greetings あいさつ**

- |                                                |                                  |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Good morning.                               | Ohayou gozaimasu. / Ohayou.      |
| 2. Good afternoon.                             | Konnichiwa.                      |
| 3. Good evening.                               | Konbanwa.                        |
| 4. Good night.                                 | Oyasuminasai. / Oyasumi.         |
| 5. Goodbye.                                    | Sayounara.                       |
| 6. Thank you.                                  | Doumo arigatou. / Arigatou.      |
| 7. Thank you very much.                        | Doumo arigatou gozaimasu.        |
| 8. You are welcome.                            | Dou itashimashite.               |
| 9. It's been a long time. / Long time no see.  | Shibaraku deshita.               |
| 10. It's been a long time. / Long time no see. | Ohisashiburi desu. (standard)    |
| 11. It's been a long time. / Long time no see. | Gobusata shite orimasu. (formal) |
| 12. Happy Birthday.                            | Tanjoubi omedetou.               |
| 13. Happy New Year.                            | Akemashite omedetou.             |
| 14. Bye.                                       | Bai bai.                         |
| 15. See you.                                   | Jaa ne. / Jaa.                   |
| 16. See you again.                             | Jaa mata. / De wa mata.          |
| 17. Farewell.                                  | Sayounara.                       |

**B Self Introductions じこしょうかい**

- |                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 18. Nice to meet you.    | Hajimemashite.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 19. What is your name?   | Onamae wa nan desu ka.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 20. I am <u>Tanaka</u> . | (polite and humble) <u>Tanaka</u> to moushimasu.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 21. I am <u>Tanaka</u> . | (simple but correct) <u>Tanaka</u> desu.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 22. Best regards.        | Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.<br>There is not an exact translation, but this phrase is said when first meeting somebody, usually after stating your name. It is also used on many other occasions to mean, "I request of you," when one is requesting something of another. |

23. Where did you come from?
24. I came from \_\_\_\_.
25. Where do you live?
26. I live in \_\_\_\_.
27. How old are you?
28. I am 25 years old.
29. How old do I look?
30. You look \_\_\_\_.

- Doko kara kimashita ka.  
\_\_\_\_\_ kara kimashita.  
Doko ni sundeimasu ka.  
\_\_\_\_\_ ni sundeimasu.  
Nan-sai desu ka.  
Ni juu go sai desu.  
Nan-sai ni miemasu ka.  
\_\_\_\_\_ ni miemasu.

**C****Communication コミュニケーション**

31. I am studying Japanese.
  32. Do you understand?
  33. Yes, I understand.
  34. No, I don't understand.
  35. Can you speak Japanese?
  36. Can you speak English?
  37. A little.
  38. Not at all.
  39. Please say it once again.
  40. Please speak more slowly.
  41. Please speak more clearly. (this can be rude)
  42. Wait a moment, please.
  43. Go ahead. / Please.
  44. Excuse me.
  45. I am sorry. / Please forgive me.
  46. What is it in Japanese?
  47. What is it in English?
- Nihongo o benkyou shiteimasu.  
Wakarimasu ka.  
Hai, wakarimasu.  
iie, wakarimasen.
- Nihongo ga hanasemasu ka.  
Eigo ga hanasemasu ka.  
Sukoshi.  
Zenzen.
- Mou ichido itte kudasai.  
Motto yakkuri itte kudasai.  
Motto hakkiri itte kudasai.
- Chotto matte kudasai.  
Douzo.  
Sumimasen.  
Gomen nasai.
- Nihongo de nan desu ka.  
Eigo de nan desu ka.

**D****Shopping ショッピング**

48. How much is it?
  49. It's 400 yen.
- Ikura desu ka.  
Yon hyaku en desu.

50. It's 22 dollars. Ni juu ni doru desu.
51. It's \_\_\_\_\_ dollars. \_\_\_\_\_ doru desu.
52. It's \_\_\_\_\_ yen. \_\_\_\_\_ en desu.
53. It's expensive. Takai desu.
54. It's cheap. Yasui desu.

**E****At a Restaurant / Eating レストランで**

55. A menu, please. Menyu- o kudasai.
56. Water, please. Mizu o kudasai.
57. More, please. Motto kudasai.
58. \_\_\_\_\_ please. \_\_\_\_\_ o kudasai.
59. It's delicious. Oishii desu.
60. It doesn't taste good. Oishikunai desu.
61. I am hungry. Onaka ga sukimashita.
62. I am thirsty. Nodo ga kawakimashita.
63. I am full. Onaka ga ippai desu.
64. I will receive. Itadakimasu. (said just prior to eating)
65. It was a good meal. Gochisou sama deshita.
- Said after a meal, normally when someone has cooked or paid for you.

**F****Entering and Exiting はいるとき、でるとき**

66. I'm going and I will come back. Ittekimasu.  
Always said by person who will be returning.
67. Go and be careful. Itterasshai.  
Always said to the person who will be back from the place they are leaving.
68. I'm home. Tadaima.
69. Welcome home. Okaerinasai.
70. Sorry to disturb you. Ojama shimasu.  
Said upon entering someone's house.

71. Sorry to have disturbed you.  
Said upon leaving someone's house.

Ojama shimashita.

## G On the Phone でんわで

72. Hello.  
73. Is Mr. Honda there?  
74. Is \_\_\_\_\_ there?

Moshi moshi. (on the phone)  
Honda san wa irasshaimasu ka.  
\_\_\_\_\_ san wa irasshaimasu ka.

## H Commands / Requests

75. Please show me.  
76. Please guide me.  
77. Please eat it.  
78. Please read it.  
79. Please say it.  
80. Please write it.  
81. Please look at it. / Please look.  
82. Please come.  
83. Please stop it.

Misete kudasai.  
Annai shite kudasai.  
Tabete kudasai.  
Yonde kudasai.  
Itte kudasai.  
Kaite kudasai.  
Mite kudasai.  
Kite kudasai.  
Yamete kudasai.

## Last Names

### □ Common Japanese surnames and their meaning

Some of these family names' meanings are easily understood, but others are mysteriously vague. You will notice that most of the names have meaning related to the natural world. The meanings of the names are determined by the kanji they are composed of.

Name	Hiragana	Kanji	Possible Meaning
Aoki	あおき	青木	blue (green) tree
Endou	えんどう	遠藤	far away wisteria
Fujita	ふじた	藤田	a field of wisteria
Hasegawa	はせがわ	長谷川	long valley river
Hashimoto	はしもと	橋本	main bridge
Hayashi	はやし	林	woods
Higashi	ひがし	東	east
Honda	ほんだ	本田	main rice paddy
Ikeda	いけだ	池田	pond rice paddy
Inoue	いのうえ	井上	above a well
Ishikawa	いしかわ	石川	stone river
Itou	いとう	伊藤	grand wisteria
Kawada	かわだ	川田	river rice paddy
Kawamoto	かわもと	川本	main river
Kimura	きむら	木村	tree village
Kobayashi	こばやし	小林	small woods
Matsumoto	まつもと	松本	main pine
Mikami	みかみ	三上	three above
Minami	みなみ	南	south
Mori	もり	森	forest
Nakajima	なかじま	中島	inner island
Nakamura	なかむら	中村	inner forest
Nakano	なかの	中野	inner field
Nishida	にしだ	西田	west rice paddy
Nishimura	にしむら	西村	west village
Ogawa	おがわ	小川	small river
Sasaki	ささき	佐々木	helping tree
Satou	さとう	佐藤	helping wisteria
Shimizu	しみず	清水	clear water
Suzuki	すずき	鈴木	bell tree
Takahashi	たかはし	高橋	tall bridge
Takenaka	たけなか	竹中	inside bamboo

Tamura	たむら	田村	rice paddy village
Tanaka	たなか	田中	inner rice paddy
Tashiro	たしろ	田代	substitute field
Uchida	うちだ	内田	inner field
Watanabe	わたなべ	渡辺	neighborhood crossing
Yamada	やまだ	山田	mountain rice paddy
Yamaguchi	やまぐち	山口	mountain exit
Yamamoto	やまもと	山本	main mountain
Yamashita	やました	山下	below mountian
Yamazaki	やまざき	山崎	mountain peninsula
Yoshida	よしだ	吉田	good rice paddy

## Girls' Given Names

### □ Common Japanese given names for girls

These are some common Japanese given names for girls. The meaning of each name depends on the kanji used. The possible kanji for each name is countless.

Name	Hiragana	Possible Kanji
Ai	あい	愛
Akemi	あけみ	明美
Akiko	あきこ	明子、秋子
Asami	あさみ	麻美
Asuka	あすか	飛鳥、明日香
Aya	あや	綾、彩、亜矢
Ayaka	あやか	綾香、亜矢香
Ayako	あやこ	綾子、亜矢子
Chikako	ちかこ	千賀子、千香子
Chiyoko	ちよこ	千代子、知世子
Erika	えりか	絵里か
Etsuko	えつこ	悦子、恵津子
Haruka	はるか	春香
Hideko	ひでこ	秀子、英子
Hiroko	ひろこ	弘子、広子
Hisako	ひさこ	久子、寿子、比沙子
Hitomi	ひとみ	瞳
Kaori	かおり	香、香里
Kazuko	かずこ	和子、員子
Keiko	けいこ	恵子、啓子
Kimiko	きみこ	君子、公子
Kiyoko	きよこ	清子、喜代子
Kumiko	くみこ	久美子、組子
Kyouko	きょうこ	京子、今日子
Maiko	まいこ	麻衣子、舞子
Manami	まなみ	真奈美、愛美
Marina	まりな	真里菜
Megumi	めぐみ	惠美
Michiko	みちこ	美智子、美知子
Mika	みか	美香
Miyoko	みよこ	美代子、三代子
Momoko	ももこ	桃子

Natsumi	なつみ	奈津美、夏美
Nobuko	のぶこ	信子、伸子
Nobuyo	のぶよ	信代
Nozomi	のぞみ	希
Reiko	れいこ	玲子、礼子
Rie	りえ	理恵、利恵
Rieko	りえこ	理恵子
Rina	りな	里奈
Risa	りさ	理沙
Sachiko	さちこ	幸子
Saori	さおり	沙織、佐緒里
Satoko	さとこ	聰子、智子
Satomi	さとみ	里美
Sayoko	さよこ	佐代子、沙代子
Sayuri	さゆり	小百合
Setsuko	せつこ	節子
Shizuka	しづか	静香
Shizuko	しづこ	静子
Tomoko	ともこ	智子、友子
Youko	ようこ	洋子、陽子
Yui	ゆい	唯、由比
Yuka	ゆか	由香、由佳
Yukari	ゆかり	由香里
Yuki	ゆき	由紀
Yumiko	ゆみこ	由美子
Yuuko	ゆうこ	裕子、優子

## Boys' Given Names

### □ Common Japanese given names for boys

These are some common Japanese given names for boys. The meaning of each name depends on the kanji used. The possible kanji for each name is countless.

Name	Hiragana	Possible Kanji
Akira	あきら	明、
Daisuke	だいすけ	大輔、大介
Hidehiro	ひでひろ	英博、英裕
Hideki	ひでき	秀樹、英樹
Hideo	ひでお	秀雄
Hideto	ひでと	秀人、英人
Hideyuki	ひでゆき	秀行、英之
Isao	いさお	功、勲
Jouji	じょうじ	讓二、讓治
Ken	けん	健、賢
Kenichi	けんいち	健一、謙一
Kenji	けんじ	健二、憲次
Makoto	まこと	誠
Masaki	まさき	正樹、真崎
Masaru	まさる	勝
Masato	まさと	正人
Minoru	みのる	実、稔
Mitsuo	みつお	光男、光夫
Noboru	のぼる	昇、登
Osamu	おさむ	修
Ryo	りょ	力、縁
Ryouta	りょうた	良太、亮太
Satoshi	さとし	聰、覚
Shingo	しんご	信吾
Shougo	しょうご	省吾
Tadashi	ただし	忠志、正
Tatsuya	たつや	達也、達矢
Tomohide	ともひで	智英、友秀
Tsubasa	つばさ	翼
Tsutomu	つとむ	勉、務
Yoshiharu	よしはる	義春
Yoshihiro	よしひろ	義弘

**Answer Key****□ Pre-Lesson B: Number conversion**

- |                           |                                    |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. san juu yon            | 2. go juu kyuu                     |
| 3. ni juu kyuu            | 4. nana juu hachi                  |
| 5. hyaku ni juu           | 6. san byaku kyuu juu ni           |
| 7. go juu nana            | 8. san zen yon                     |
| 9. sen ni hyaku san       | 10. nana hyaku hachi juu kyuu      |
| 11. kyuu juu kyuu         | 12. yon sen roppyaku nana juu go   |
| 13. kyuu hyaku san juu ni | 14. hassan nana hyaku nana juu san |

**□ Pre-Lesson B: Everyday numbers**

1. (answer will vary)
2. (answer will vary)
3. (answer will vary)

**□ Pre-Lesson C: Japanese numbers**

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. 75 years old  | 6. 16 years old  |
| 2. 48 years old  | 7. 51 years old  |
| 3. 82 years old  | 8. 20 years old  |
| 4. 107 years old | 9. 800 years old |
| 5. 34 years old  | 10. 1 year old   |

**□ Pre-Lesson C: Question and answer 1**

1. How old are you?
2. What is your name?

\_\_\_\_\_sai desu.  
\_\_\_\_\_desu / \_\_\_\_\_to moushimasu.

**□ Pre-Lesson C: Question and answer 2**

How old do I look?

1-6. (answers will vary)

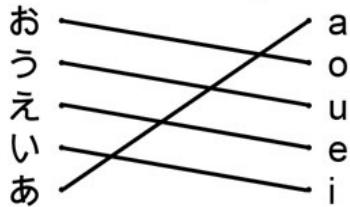
**□ Pre-Lesson D: Japanese translation**

- |                              |                                                                                      |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Mari:<br>Mari's Mother:   | I will go and come back. / I'll be back.<br>Have a good day. / Take care. / See you. |
| 2. Kenji:<br>Kenji's Mother: | I'm home. / I'm back.<br>Welcome back home.                                          |

**□ Lesson 1: Word practice**

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. お ka あ san | 2. いえ           |
| 3. お to う san | 4. あ ka い       |
| 5. い mo う to  | 6. ka う         |
| 7. う sagi     | 8. え npitsu     |
| 9. お ne え san | 10. お moshiro い |
| 11. い su      | 12. お kiru      |

## □ Lesson 1: Hiragana matching



## □ Lesson 1: Question and answer

### Question

1. What is it?
2. Is it a towel?
3. What is it?
4. Is it a nose?
5. Is she Ms. Tanaka?
6. What is it?

### Answer

- Haburashi desu.  
いいえ、makura desu.  
い nu desu.  
いいえ、kuchi desu.  
いいえ、Yamamoto san desu.  
Beddo desu.

## □ Lesson 1: Japanese translation

- |                |                              |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Tanaka san: | What is it? Is it a blanket? |
| Kobayashi san: | Please say it one more time. |
| Tanaka san:    | Is it a blanket?             |
| Kobayashi san: | No, it is a towel.           |

## □ Lesson 1: English translation

- |             |                                                   |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Kouichi: | (あ nata wa) Masumi san desu ka.                   |
| Masumi:     | いいえ、Yasuko desu. (あ nata wa) Yuusuke san desu ka. |
| Kouichi:    | いいえ、Kouichi desu.                                 |

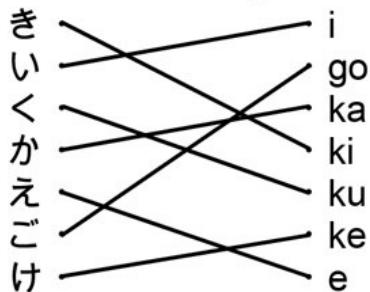
## □ Lesson 1: What would you say?

1. Mo う い chido い tte kudasa い.
2. Hajimemashite. \_\_\_\_\_ to moushimasu. Yoroshiku お nega い shimasu.
3. Nansa い ni miemasu ka.
4. Nakamura san desu ka.
5. Motto yukkuri い tte kudasai.

## □ Lesson 2: Word Practice

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. きい ro    | 2. きく        |
| 3. か minari | 4. くうぐ n     |
| 5. こけ       | 6. いく        |
| 7. け mushi  | 8. くうこう      |
| 9. ぎ n い ro | 10. き n'ni < |
| 11. ごご      | 12. こお ri    |

## □ Lesson 2: Hiragana matching



## □ Lesson 2: Question and answer 1

1. What is this?
2. What is this?
3. Is this a mirror?
4. Are these vegetables?

(この) は くじら です。  
 (この) は コンピューター です。  
 いいえ、(この) は 鏡 です。  
 いいえ、(この) は 野菜 です。

## □ Lesson 2: Question and answer 2

1. Which is a book?
2. Which is a vegetable?
3. Which is a fruit?

(1st picture) これは 本 です。  
 (middle picture) これは 野菜 です。  
 (2nd picture) これは 柿子 です。

## □ Lesson 2: Question and answer 3

1. Q: What is that over there?  
 (あの) は なに ですか。
2. Q: What is this?  
 (この) は なに ですか。
3. Q: Is that a pillow?  
 それは 枕 ですか。
4. Q: What is that?  
 それは なに ですか。

A: That's a dog.  
 あれは 犬 です。  
  
 A: That's a toothbrush  
 (それは) ハブラシ です。  
  
 A: No, this is a towel.  
 いいえ、これは 手拭 です。  
  
 A: This is a book.  
 (これは) 本 です。

## □ Lesson 2: Japanese translation

1. Satoko san:  
 Shouta san:  
 Satoko san:  
 Shouta san:
- Is that a book?  
 No, it is a magazine.  
 Please say it one more time. What is it?  
 This is a magazine.

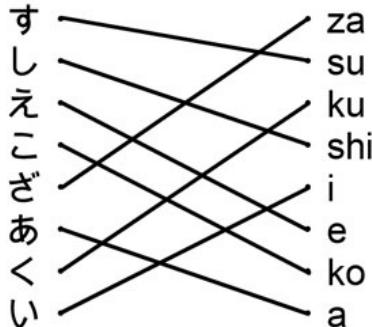
## □ Lesson 2: English translation

1. Japanese person:  
 American person:  
 Japanese person:  
 American person:  
 Japanese person:
- (あなた) は 日本人 ですか。  
 いいえ、私は アメリカ人 です。  
 あなた は 日本人 ですか。  
 いいえ、私は アメリカ人 です。  
 あなた が どうぞ。

## □ Lesson 3: Word practice

- |            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| 1. mura さき | 2. さす         |
| 3. shi ro  | 4. そ tsugyo ū |
| 5. su si   | 6. じか n       |
| 7. sa ru   | 8. おじいさ n     |
| 9. a se    | 10. a n ze n  |
| 11. zo u   | 12. げ nざい     |

## □ Lesson 3: Hiragana matching



## □ Lesson 3: Question and answer 1

### Question

1. Who is this?
2. Is this Jenny?
3. Whose birds are these?
4. Whose mother is this?

### Answer

- Yo shi da sa n de す.  
いいえ、Monika sa n de す.  
Ta ka co san no tori de す.  
Makoto (くん) no oka a sa n de す.

## □ Lesson 3: Question and answer 2 (sample answers)

### Question

1. What's your name?
2. What's your grandmother's name?
3. What's your mother's car?
4. How old is your grandpa?
5. How old is your dad?

### Answer

- Yamada Yo shi co de す.  
Yamada Ma sa mi de す.  
Toyota de す.  
Nanaju ū go sai de す.  
go ju ū ni sai de す.

## □ Lesson 3: Japanese translation

1. Kobayashi san: Whose book is this?  
Nakaya san: I don't know, maybe it is Mr. Tanaka's book.

## □ Lesson 3: English translation

1. Terada san: Tana ka sa n de su ka.  
Yamada san: いいえ、Yamada de す。Tana ka sa n wa dare de su ka.  
Terada san: (Tana ka sa n wa) co baya shi sa n no tomodachi de す。

## □ Lesson 3: Reading comprehension translation

- ① My name is Honda.
- ② I am 35 years old.
- ③ My girlfriend's name is Terada.
- ④ She is 29 years old.

## □ Lesson 3: Reading comprehension questions

### Question

1. Is Honda's girlfriend's name Tanaka?
2. Who is Terada?
3. Is Terada Yamada's girlfriend?
4. How old is Ms. Terada?

### Answer

- いいえ、Terada de す.\*  
 Honda さ n no か nojo de す.  
 いいえ、Honda san no か nojo de す.  
 OR いいえ、chi がい ma す.  
 Niju う kyu う さい de す.

\* (Note: いいえ、Honda san no か nojo no name え wa in front of the answer above would be unnaturally long. Try to keep the answers simple.)

## □ Lesson 3: What would you say?

1. さ yo う nara. (later you will learn itte き ma す)
2. お hayo う ござい ma す.
3. Wa か rima せ n.
4. あ ri が to う ござい ma す.

## □ Lesson 3: Short dialogue translation

Yoshida san:

Good afternoon, Ms. Ueki.

Ueki san:

Good afternoon, Mr. Yoshida. It's been a long time.

Yoshida san:

Is your father doing well?

Ueki san:

Yes he is fine. What is that?

Yoshida san:

This is a camera. It's my hobby.

Ueki san:

That's great!

Yoshida san:

What is your (Yoshida san's) hobby?

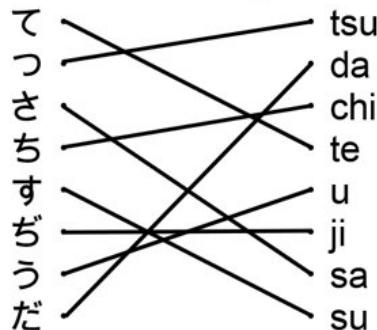
Yoshida san:

My hobby is golf.

## □ Lesson 4: Word practice

- |           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1. wa たし  | 2. ただ        |
| 3. たつ     | 4. とつぜ n     |
| 5. ちぢ mu  | 6. てつだう      |
| 7. いたい    | 8. おとうさ n    |
| 9. hana ち | 10. いきど mari |
| 11. で nwa | 12. とどく      |

## □ Lesson 4: Hiragana matching



## □ Lesson 4: Question and answer 1

### Question

1. What is this in Japanese?
2. What is this in Japanese?
3. What is this in English?
4. What is this in English?

### Answer

- うさぎです。  
うしです。  
「Panda」です。  
「Lion」です。

## □ Lesson 4: Question and answer 2

1. What color is your car?
2. What color is your toothbrush?
3. What color are pandas?
4. What color are bananas?
5. Are elephants grey?

\_\_\_\_\_です。  
[any color] です。  
し ro とく ro です。  
きい ro (い) です。  
Ha い、そ う す で。 / Ha い、gure- です。

## □ Lesson 4: What would you say?

1. ご menna さい。/ す mima せ n.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ さ n no い nu wa nani い ro ですか。
3. いいえ、ちがい ma す。( Ha い, そ う す で。 if you ARE Tanaka san)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ wa, nihon ご で nan ですか。

## □ Lesson 4: Japanese translation

- |                |                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Takada san: | What color is (your) car?        |
| Kadota san:    | My car?                          |
| Takada san:    | Yes.                             |
| Kadota san:    | It's purple. How about your car? |
| Takada san:    | My car is silver and gold.       |

## □ Lesson 4: Reading comprehension translation

- ① Junko is 25 years old.
- ② Her dad is 52 years old.
- ③ Her dad's name is Yoshihiro.
- ④ Junko's car and her dad's car are Hondas.
- ⑤ Dad's car is purple.
- ⑥ Junko's car is pink and blue.

## □ Lesson 4: Reading comprehension questions

### Question

1. What color is Junko's car?
2. Whose car is the Honda?
4. Whose car is purple?
5. How old is Junko?
6. Who is 52 years old?

### Answer

- Pinku to あお de す。  
Jun こさ n to Jun こさ n no お to うさ n no < ruma de す。  
お to うさ n no < ruma de す。  
Ni ju うござい de す。  
Jun こさ n no お to うさ n de す。

## □ Lesson 4: Short dialogue translation

Mr. Kobayashi:

What (kind of) car is your car, Mr. Tanaka?

Mr. Tanaka:

My car is a Nissan.

What about yours?

Mr. Kobayashi:

My car is a Mitsubishi. Its color is red.

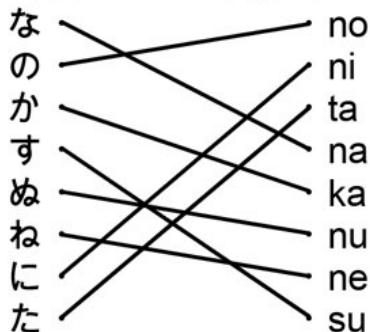
Mr. Tanaka:

I see. My car is white.

## □ Lesson 5: Word practice

- |         |               |
|---------|---------------|
| 1. なつ   | 2. に hon      |
| 3. ねこ   | 4. よ なか       |
| 5. の mu | 6. ね ru       |
| 7. なに   | 8. ぬいぐるみ rumi |
| 9. にがい  | 10. おねえさん n   |
| 11. ぬぐ  | 12. の ru      |

## □ Lesson 5: Hiragana matching



## □ Lesson 5: Question and answer 1

### Question

- 1a. Is this fish?
- 1b. Well then, what is it?

### Answer

いいえ、さかな ja ないです。  
Chikin です。

- 2a. Is this a book?
- 2b. Well then, what is it?

いいえ、hon ja ないです。  
し nbun です。

- 3a. Is this a bowl and a spoon?
- 3b. Well then, what are they?

いいえ、(お) chawan と supu-n ja ないです。  
(お) chawan と (お) ha shi です。

- 4a. Are these shoes?
- 4b. Well then, what are they?

いいえ、くつ ja ないです。  
ず bon です。

## □ Lesson 5: Question and answer 2

1. Which one do you like/dislike?
2. Which one do you like/dislike?

こ re が すき / き ra い で す。  
こ re が すき / き ra い で す。

## □ Lesson 5: Question and answer 3 (sample answers)

### Question

1. Do you like traveling?
2. Do you dislike cats?
3. Do you like vegetables?
4. Do you like Japanese?
5. Does sushi taste good?

### Answer

Ha い、すき で す / いいえ、き ra い で す。  
Ha い、き ra い で す / いいえ、すき で す。  
Ha い、すき で す / いいえ、すき ja い で す。  
Ha い、だいすき で す / いいえ、だいき ra い で す。  
Ha い、おいしく で す / いいえ、おいしくない で す。

## □ Lesson 5: Japanese translation

1. Yoshio san likes cars a lot.
2. Yoshio san's cars are red and white.  
(this sentence could mean, "Yoshio's car is red and white," but from the context of the other sentences we see that he has two cars.)
3. His white car is a Honda.
4. The red one is a Toyota.
5. Yoshio's father likes cars a lot.  
(This would be better as "Yoshio's father also likes cars a lot," but we haven't learned the "also" particle.)
6. His father's cars are a gold car and a yellow car.
7. His mother does not like the yellow car.

## □ Lesson 5: Reading comprehension translation

- ① Satoko's boyfriend's name is Yoshio Tanaka.
- ② Satoko is 25 years old.
- ③ Yoshio is 27 years old.
- ④ Satoko likes shopping a lot.
- ⑤ Yoshio doesn't like shopping.
- ⑥ Yoshio likes work.
- ⑦ Satoko dislikes work.
- ⑧ Satoko and Yoshio like travel a lot.

## □ Lesson 5: Reading comprehension questions

Question	Answer
1. Who is Satoko's boyfriend?	たなか yo しおさんです。
2. Does Yoshio dislike his work?	いいえ、しごとが好きです。
3. How old is Satoko?	に ju うございです。
4. Who likes shopping?	さとこさんが (かい mo のが) すぎです。
5. Who likes traveling?	さとこさんと yo しおさんが (ryo こうが) すぎです。

## □ Lesson 5: Short dialogue translation

Ms. Mori: Do you like movies, Ms. Nishida?

Ms. Nishida: Yes, I like them a lot.

Ms. Mori: Me, too. As for actors, who do you like?

Ms. Nishida: I like Harrison Ford.

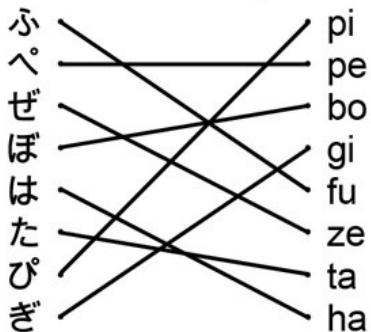
Ms. Mori: Is that so? I like Brad Pitt.

Ms. Nishida: I also like Brad Pitt, too.

## □ Lesson 6: Word Practice

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. は ru       | 2. ひ ru ごは n  |
| 3. ふ yu       | 4. へい wa      |
| 5. えほ n       | 6. が nば ru    |
| 7. はなび        | 8. か mi ぶく ro |
| 9. ひと me ぼ re | 10. く ra べ ru |
| 11. ひばな       | 12. え n ぴつ    |

## □ Lesson 6: Hiragana matching



## □ Question and answer 1 (sample answers)

1. Which one do/don't you want? Ju-su ガ ほしいです / みずが ほしくないです。
2. Which one do/don't you want? う ma ガ ほしいです / いぬが ほしくないです。

## □ Lesson 6: Question and answer 2 (sample answers)

1. What color car do you like? し ro いく ruma ガ すきです。
2. Do you want a Japanese magazine? はい、ほしいです / いいえ、ほしくないです。
3. Do you want a cold cola? はい、つ me たい ko-ra ガ ほしいです。  
いいえ、ko-ra ガ き ra いです。
4. Is your TV new? はい、あた ra しいです。いいえ、あた ra しくないです。

## □ Lesson 6: Question and answer 3 (answers may vary)

1. Ichiro: なにが ほしいですか。  
Yumiko: Konpyu-ta-が ほしいです。
2. Nurse: Ma < ra ガ ほしいですか。  
Patient: いいえ、ほしくないです。

## □ Lesson 6: English translation

- George: な ma えは な n ですか。  
Yu か ri: Yu か ri です。あなたの な ma えは な n ですか。  
George: Jo-ji です。さ nju う yon さいです。な n さいですか。  
Yu か ri: に ju う ro くさいです。

## □ Lesson 6: Reading comprehension translation

- ① My name is Matsumoto.
- ② I like the internet.
- ③ I want a computer.
- ④ My friend Tashiro doesn't want a computer.
- ⑤ Tashiro wants a red car.
- ⑥ I don't like red cars.
- ⑦ I like white cars.

## □ Lesson 6: Reading comprehension questions

- |                                        |                      |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. What does Matsumoto like?           | Inta-netto ガ すきです。   |
| 2. What is Matsumoto's friend's name?  | たし ro ( < n ) です。    |
| 3. What does Tashiro want?             | あかいく ruma ガ ほしいです。   |
| 4. Does Matsumoto like red cars?       | いいえ、すき ja ないです。      |
| 5. What color car does Matsumoto like? | し ro いく ruma ガ すきです。 |

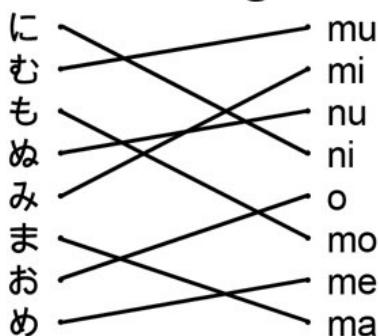
## □ Lesson 6: Short dialogue translation

- Mr. Yoshida:  
Karen:  
Mr. Yoshida:  
Karen:  
Mr. Yoshida:  
Karen:
- Please come in, Karen.  
Thank you (I will come in).  
What drink would you like?  
Let's see... I want cola.  
Wait a minute. Here you are.  
Thank you.

## □ Lesson 7: Word practice

- |         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| 1. も ri | 2. もみじ    |
| 3. む ri | 4. めだつ    |
| 5. みる   | 6. めがね    |
| 7. たべもの | 8. まも ru  |
| 9. のみもの | 10. むしあつい |
| 11. まほう | 12. みみず   |

## □ Lesson 7: Hiragana matching



## □ Lesson 7: Grammar drill

1. みかんが すきです。でも、りんごは すき ja ないです。
2. いぬが ほしいです。でも、ねこは ほしくないです。
3. いちごが おいしいです。でも、れもんは おいしくないです。

## □ Lesson 7: What would you say? (sample answers)

- |                                            |                                  |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Where is a good (delicious) restaurant? | _____ です。                        |
| 2. Where is your house?                    | とう kyo う です。                     |
| 3. Do you want a Japanese car?             | はい、ほしいです。/いいえ、ほしくないです。           |
| 4. Do you like green apples?               | はい、すきです。/いいえ、すき ja ないです。         |
| 5. Is your TV new?                         | はい、あた ra しいです。/いいえ、ふ ru いです。     |
| 6. What color is your bicycle?             | あか(い)です。                         |
| 7. Do you want cold water?                 | はい、ほしいです。<br>いいえ, ju-su が ほしいです。 |

## □ Lesson 7: Short dialogue 1

- Mr. Tanaka: Is your house over there, Mike?  
 Mike: No, it's there.  
 Mr. Tanaka: Huh? Where is it? I don't know (which one?) Is it the green house?  
 Mike: No, the green house is my friend's house. The yellow one is mine.  
 Mr. Tanaka: Oh, I see.

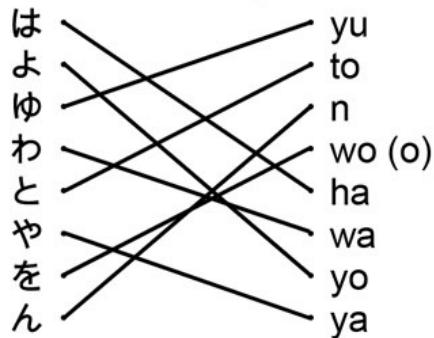
## □ Lesson 7: Short dialogue 2

- Mr. Tanaka: Do you like sushi, Mike?  
 Mike: Yes, I love it.  
 Mr. Tanaka: What do you like?  
 Mike: I like tuna and shrimp.  
 Mr. Tanaka: I see. I like halibut and squid. Do you like Japanese tea?  
 Mike: No. Japanese tea is not delicious, but I like cola.

## □ Lesson 8: Word practice

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. わ ら う    | 2. だいこん      |
| 3. みずを の む  | 4. わ る い     |
| 5. わたし      | 6. ほんを か う   |
| 7. こ ん や    | 8. わす れ る    |
| 9. えいがを み る | 10. きんぞく     |
| 11. か ん ん ん | 12. すしを たべ る |

## □ Lesson 8: Hiragana matching



## □ Lesson 8: Questions (sample answers)

- |                                            |                              |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. When is your father's birthday?         | Ju うがつ に ju ういちにちです。         |
| 2. What month and what day is Christmas?   | Ju うにがつ に ju うごにちです。         |
| 3. What month do you like?                 | ごがつが すきです。                   |
| 4. What month and what day is today?       | Kyo うは、さ n がつ とおかです。         |
| 5. What month and what date was yesterday? | きのうは、さ n がつ ここのかでした。         |
| 6. Is Children's Day is July 4th?          | いいえ、ちがいます。<br>いいえ、ごがつ いつかです。 |

## □ Lesson 8: Dates (sample answers)

- |                      |              |
|----------------------|--------------|
| 1. Mother's birthday | しちがつ みっか     |
| 2. Constitution Day  | ごがつ みっか      |
| 3. March 15          | さんがつ ju うごにち |
| 4. Culture Day       | ju ういちがつ みっか |
| 5. Children's Day    | ごがつ いつか      |
| 6. April 20          | しがつ はつか      |

## □ Lesson 8: Japanese translation

- Imai san: When is your birthday?  
 Yamada san: It is March 23rd. And yours?  
 Imai san: My birthday is tomorrow.  
 Yamada san: Congratulations! How old are you? (How old will you be?)  
 Imai san: 38 years old.

## □ Lesson 8: Reading comprehension translation

- ① My name is Yukiko.
- ② Yesterday was my birthday.
- ③ I am 27 years old.
- ④ My birthday is (on) Christmas.
- ⑤ My friend's present was (a set of) red chopsticks.
- ⑥ My father's present was a Japanese language book.
- ⑦ I really like Japan.

## □ Lesson 8: Reading comprehension questions

- |                                                      |                          |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. When was Yukiko's birthday?                       | きのうでした。/ 12 がつ 25 にちでした。 |
| 2. How old is Yukiko today?                          | に ju うななさいです。            |
| 3. What color chopsticks were her friend's present ? | あかい (お) はしでした。           |
| 4. What was her dad's present?                       | にほんごの ほんでした。             |
| 5. Does Yukiko dislike Japan?                        | いいえ、にほんが だいすきです。         |

## □ Lesson 8: Short dialogue translation

- |            |                                                                |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Mr. Honda: | What day of the month is it today?                             |
| Mr. Hino:  | It's the ninth.                                                |
| Mr. Honda: | What? Isn't in the seventh?                                    |
| Mr. Hino:  | No, tomorrow is the tenth.                                     |
| Mr. Honda: | What am I going to do? Yesterday was my girlfriend's birthday! |
| Mr. Hino:  | Really?                                                        |

## □ Lesson 9: Word practice

- |          |             |
|----------|-------------|
| 1. あたらしい | 2. しる       |
| 3. れんあい  | 4. りんご      |
| 5. みせる   | 6. れん shu う |
| 7. べんり   | 8. うるおい     |
| 9. かくれんぼ | 10. どうろ     |
| 11. ろうか  | 12. まわりみち   |

## □ Lesson 9: Hiragana matching

る	ru
し	shi
り	re
ろ	i
ぬ	ro
れ	ra
い	nu
ら	ri

## □ Lesson 9: Event dates

1. Kurisumasu
2. こどものひ
3. がんたん
4. (わたしの) たんじょうび

ju にがつ に ju うごにち  
 ごがつ いつか  
 いちがつ ついたち  
 \_\_\_\_がつ\_\_\_\_にち

## □ Lesson 9: Questions (answers vary based on when answered)

1. What day of the week is the day after tomorrow?
2. What day was the date and month before yesterday?
3. What is the date and month of your birthday?
4. What year was last year?
5. What day of the week was the 1<sup>st</sup> of last month?
6. What day is next Thursday?
7. What day was last Saturday?
8. What year is next year?

~ようびです。  
 ~にちでした。  
 (answers vary)  
 にせん~ねんでした。  
 ~ようびでした。  
 ~にちです。  
 ~にちでした。  
 にせん~ねんです。

## □ Lesson 9: Japanese translation

- ① Today is December 30th.
- ② The day after tomorrow is New Year's Day.
- ③ This year's New Year's Day is on Thursday.
- ④ Last year it was Wednesday.

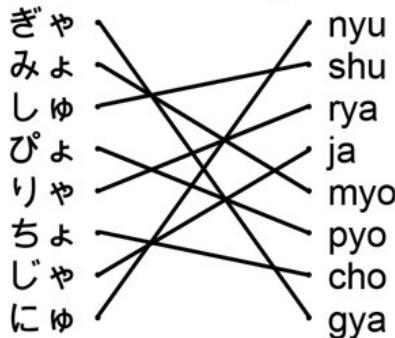
## □ Lesson 9: Short dialogue translation

- Yoko: This Friday is my birthday.  
 Takahiro: Really? Happy birthday!  
 Yoko: Thanks.  
 Takahiro: What year were you born?  
 Yoko: I was born in 1973.  
 Takahiro: Me, too! My birthday is June 3<sup>rd</sup>, 1973.  
 Yoko: Really?  
 Takahiro: When is your birthday party?  
 Yoko: It's this Saturday.

## □ Lesson 10: Word practice

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. とうちゃん  | 2. さんびやく   |
| 3. としょかん  | 4. ぎゅうにゅう  |
| 5. さんみやく  | 6. しょうばい   |
| 7. じゅうたん  | 8. でんぴょう   |
| 9. きょうだい  | 10. きょうりゅう |
| 11. りゅうがく | 12. ぎゅうどん  |

## □ Lesson 10: Hiragana matching



## □ Lesson 10: Grammar drill 1

- Ke-ki を おねがいします / Ke-ki を ください。
- Piza を おねがいします / Piza を ください。
- Sandoicchi と ju-su を おねがいします / Sandoicchi と ju-su を ください。
- Hanba-ga- と Poteto を おねがいします / Hanba-ga- と Poteto を ください。

## □ Lesson 10: Grammar drill 2 (sample answers)

- はい、あたらしい terebi が ほしいです。あたらしい konpyu-ta- も ほしいです。  
いいえ、あたらしい terebi が ほしくないです。でも、あたらしい konpyu-ta- が ほしいです。
- はい、はるが だいすきです。でも、なつは すきじゃないです。  
いいえ、はるが すきじゃないです。なつが すきです。
- いいえ、ko-ra は おいしくないです。ju-su が おいしいです。  
はい、ko-ra は おいしいです。ju-su も おいしいです。
- いいえ、わたしの くるまは おおきくないです。でも、おかあさんの くるまは おおきいです。  
はい、わたしの くるまは おおきいです。おかあさんの くるまも おおきいです。

## □ Lesson 10: Japanese translation

Waitress: Welcome!

Customer: A menu please.

5 minutes later...

Customer: Excuse me.

Waitress: Yes.

Customer: Spaghetti, please.

Waitress: What would you like to drink?

Customer: Water please.

Waitress: Okay, Please wait a few moments.

10 minutes later...

Waitress: Here you go.

Customer: Thank you. Please give me tea and a cola.

Waitress: Okay, Please wait a few moments.

40 minutes later...

Customer: How much is it?

Waitress: 2,521 yen.

Customer: Okay.

Waitress: The change is 479 yen. Thank you very much.

## □ Lesson 10: Short dialogue translation

Waitress: Welcome. Here is our menu.

Sayuri: The tempura is tasty here.

Chieko: Really? Well then, I would like tempura.

Sayuri: I like tempura, too. But today I would like tonkatsu.

Chieko: Ok then, tempura and tonkatsu please.

Waitress: Certainly. What would you like for a drink?

Sayuri: I would like an iced tea.

Chieko: (Green) tea for me, please.

Waitress: Certainly.

## □ Lesson 11: Japanese questions (sample answers)

1. How many legs does a horse have?
2. How many stars are there on the American flag?
3. How many pencils do you want?
4. How many pizzas do you want?

よんほんです。  
ごじゅっこです。  
ごほん、ほしいです。  
いちまい、ほしいです。

## □ Lesson 11: English questions

1. しろい ほしは いくつですか。
2. えんぴつは なんぼんですか。
3. ゆびは なんぼんですか。
4. はたは なんぼんですか。

よっつです。 / よんこです。  
はっぽんです。  
じゅっぽんです。 / じっぽんです。  
ろっぽんです。

(flags on a pole use the なんぼん counter. If not on a pole, it would be the なんまい counter)

6. とけいは いくつですか。

よっつです。

## □ Lesson 11: Grammar drill

1. Chiketto を にまい おねがいします / Chiketto を にまい ください。
2. たまごを じゅうにこ おねがいします / たまごを じゅうにこ ください。
3. Chi-zuba-ga-を ふたつ おねがいします / Chi-zuba-ga-を ふたつ ください。
4. えんぴつを さんぽん おねがいします / えんぴつを さんぽん ください。
5. にんじんを よんほん おねがいします / にんじんを よんほん ください。

## □ Lesson 11: Short dialogue

- Sushi Chef: Welcome.
- Jon: Excuse me, please give me salmon roe (salmon eggs) and yellow tail.
- Sushi Chef: Okay! How about the customer there?
- Masami: I'll have miso soup and a green tea, please.
- What is today's recommendation?
- Sushi Chef: Let's see... The sweet shrimp is good today.
- Masami: Then give me one of those, please.
- Jon: Can I also have green soybeans, please?
- Masami: I want green soybeans, too. Give us two plates, please.
- Sushi Chef: Got it! (I have understood)

## □ Lesson 12: Grammar drill

Dictionary Form	Polite Forms			
	Present/Future		Past	
	positive	negative	positive	negative
いく	いきます	いきません	いきました	いきませんでした
くる	きます	きません	きました	きませんでした
かえる	かえります	かえりません	かえりました	かえりませんでした
わかる	わかります	わかりません	わかりました	わかりませんでした

## □ Lesson 12: Substitution drill

1. きょう、ぎんこうに いきません。  
きょう、がっこうに いきません。  
きょう、makudonarudo に いきません。  
きょう、ともだちのいえに いきません。
2. たなかさんは、おとといとうきょうに かえりました。  
たなかさんは、きのうとうきょうに かえりました。  
たなかさんは、せんしゅうのきんようびとうきょうに かえりました。  
たなかさんは、せんげつのいつかとうきょうに かえりました。
3. やまもとさんは、にほんに かえりませんでした。  
やまもとさんは、amerikaに かえりませんでした。  
やまもとさんは、rosanzerusuに かえりませんでした。  
やまもとさんは、shikagoに かえりませんでした。

4. やまださんは、さんがつに ここに きます。  
 やまださんは、らいげつのふつかに ここに きます。  
 やまださんは、らいしゅうのどようびに ここに きます。  
 やまださんは、らいねんのごがつに ここに きます。
5. おかあさんの いえに いきます。  
 おかあさんの いえに いきません。  
 おかあさんの いえに いきました。  
 おかあさんの いえに いきませんでした。
6. たむらさんの おとうさんは、ほんごが わかります。  
 たむらさんの おとうさんは、えいごが わかります。  
 たむらさんの おとうさんは、konpyu-ta-が わかります。  
 たむらさんの おとうさんは、ひらがなとかたかなが わかります。

## □ Lesson 12: Reading comprehension translation

- ① This is America's Chicago city.
- ② Mari went to Japan on October 3rd.
- ③ Yesterday she returned to Chicago.
- ④ Mari and her friend Yoshiko are going to a party tomorrow.
- ⑤ Mari's clothing (for the party) is white.
- ⑥ Yoshiko's are orange.
- ⑦ Tomorrow is Halloween.
- ⑧ Mari really likes parties.
- ⑨ In September she went to Yoshiko's Father's birthday party.
- ⑩ Next year on July 10th she is going to Korea.

## □ Lesson 12: Reading comprehension questions

1. Where did Mari return to yesterday?  
Shikago に かえりました。
2. What is Mari's friend's name?  
よしこさん です。
3. What is the month and day of the month today?  
じゅうがつ さんじゅうにちです。  
(because tomorrow is Halloween in sentence 7)
4. Where did Mari go in September?  
よしこさん の おとうさんの たんじょうび pa-ti-に いきました。
5. Where is Mari going next year?  
かんこくに いきます。
6. Where is here?  
Shikago しです。OR Amerika の Shikago しです。
7. Where did Mari go in August?  
Did this one confuse you? It should have because we don't really know where Mari went in August.  
So the answer is: わかりません。

## □ Lesson 12: Short dialogue translation

- Ms. Smith: Good afternoon, Mr. Tanaka.  
 Mr. Tanaka: Good afternoon, Ms. Smith. It sure is hot isn't it?  
 Ms. Smith: Yes, it's hot.  
 Mr. Tanaka: Where are you going?  
 Ms. Smith: I'm going to school (from) now.  
 Mr. Tanaka: What school is it?  
 Ms. Smith: It's Japanese language school.  
 Mr. Tanaka: I see. I'm going to work now.

## □ Lesson 12: English translation

- Ryouhei: ちゅうごくに いきます。  
 Nobuko: わたしは きょねん いきました。いつ いきますか。  
 Ryouhei: らいげつのはつかです。  
 Nobuko: いつかえりますか。  
 Ryouhei: たぶん さんじゅうにちです / たぶん さんじゅうにちに かえります。  
 Nobuko: いいですね。

## □ Lesson 13: Grammar drill

1. ろくじ ごふん
2. くじ にじゅっはん
3. さんじ よんじゅっはん
4. はちじはん
5. じゅうじ よんじゅうごふん
6. じゅうにじ ごじゅうさんぶん
7. よじはん
8. にじ じゅうななふん
9. しちじ ななふん

## □ Lesson 13: Question and answer (answers may vary)

- |                                                        |                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. From what time does your work/school start?         | しごとは、くじからです。                   |
| 2. What time do you go to work/school ?                | はちじに がっこうに いきます。               |
| 3. What days of the week do you go to work/school?     | げつようびから きんようびまで<br>がっこうに いきます。 |
| 4. What time do you go home?                           | ろくじに いえに かえります。                |
| 5. What time is it now?                                | いま、よじはんです。                     |
| 6. From what time to what time is your Japanese class? | ごじから ろくじはんまでです。                |
| 7. Who is your Japanese teacher?                       | やまだせんせいです。                     |
| 8. From what month to what month is winter?            | じゅうにがつから にがつまでです。              |
| 9. From what month to what month is summer?            | ろくがつから くがつまでです。                |

## □ Lesson 13: Reading comprehension translation

- ① This is a Japanese language school.
- ② Sam came here at 10:00AM
- ③ John came at 10:15.
- ④ Today's class is from 10:30 to 1:00PM.
- ⑤ Sam will return home at 2:00.
- ⑥ She will go to work at 4:00PM.

- ⑦ Sam's job is from 4:30 to 1:30AM.
- ⑧ Sam's job is a hotel job.
- ⑨ John will go to Spanish school at 2:30.
- ⑩ Spanish school is until three.
- ⑪ He will return home at six.
- ⑫ He has a part time job from 8:00PM.
- ⑬ He goes at 7:55.
- ⑭ His part time job is until twelve.
- ⑮ John's part time job is McDonald's.

## □ Lesson 13: Reading comprehension questions

1. Where is here?  
にほんごの がっこうです。
2. Who came to school at ten o'clock?  
Samuでした。
3. When is today's class?  
じゅうじから ごごいちじまで です。
4. From what time until what time is Sam's work?  
よじはんから ごぜんいちじまで です。
5. What time did Sam return home?  
にじに かえりました。
6. From what time until what time is John's part time job?  
ごごはちじから じゅうにじまで です。
7. What time did John come to Japanese school?  
じゅうじ じゅうごふんに きました。
8. Where did John go at 2:30?  
Supeinごの がっこうに いきました。

## □ Lesson 13: Japanese translation

1. A: From when do you work? / When does your work start?  
B: It starts from February 8<sup>th</sup>.  
A: From what time until what time is the job?  
B: It is from 8:00 A.M. to 4:00 P.M.
2. A: What time is it now?  
B: 4:20.  
A: I am going home at 4:30.  
B: Where is your house?  
A: It's over there.
3. A: I am returning to Japan from tomorrow. (*perfectly correct sentence in Japanese.*)  
B: Until when?  
A: Until August 15<sup>th</sup>.  
B: Is that so? That's nice.

## □ Lesson 13: English translation

1. A: いつここにきましたか。  
B: くじにきました。  
A: ともだちはどこですか。  
B: ともだちはきませんでした。  
A: いまともだちはどこですか。  
B: いえにいます。
  
2. A: なんじのひこうきですか。/ ひこうきはなんじですか。  
B: ごぜんじゅうじはんです。  
A: なんじにくうこうにいきますか。  
B: くじにいきます。  
A: わかりました。
  
3. A: Arubaitoはなんじからですか。  
B: いちじからです。  
A: Arubaitoがすきですか。  
B: いいえ、すきじゃないです。

## □ Lesson 13: Particles

- 1.わたしのしごとははちじからごじまでです。
- 2.せんげつのじゅうごにちはもくようびでした。
- 3.なんじにいえにかえりますか。
- 4.やまださんのくるまはしろとgure-です。
- 5.いぬがすきです。でも、ねこはきらいです。
- 6.あたらしいじてんしゃがほしいです。
- 7.どれがたなかさんのほんですか。
- 8.かようびにとうきょうにいきます。
9. Hanba-ga-とpotatoをおねがいします。Ko-raもおねがいします

## □ Lesson 13: Short dialogue translation

- Mr. Watanabe: Are you also working from 8:00 tomorrow, Mr. Hashimoto?  
 Mr. Hashimoto: No, tomorrow I'm off.  
 Mr. Watanabe: That's nice. Where are you going, tomorrow?  
 Mr. Hashimoto: I'm going to Osaka.  
 Mr. Watanabe (By) airplane?  
 Mr. Hashimoto: Yes, (by) the nine o'clock plane. I'm going to the airport at eight.  
 Mr. Watanabe Is that so? When are you coming back?  
 Mr. Hashimoto: I'm coming back to Tokyo on next Tuesday.

## English Glossary

### #

0	rei, maru, zero	れい、まる、ゼロ
1	ichi	いち
2	ni	に
3	san	さん
4	shi, yon	し、よん
5	go	ご
6	roku	ろく
7	shichi, nana	しち、なな
8	hachi	はち
9	ku, kyuu	く、きゅう
10	juu	じゅう
1 minute	ippun	いっ�ん
10 minutes	juppun	じゅっ�ん
11 minutes	juuippun	じゅういっ�ん
12 minutes	juunifun	じゅうにふん
13 minutes	juusanpun	じゅうさんぶん
14 minutes	juuyonpun	じゅうよんぶん
15 minutes	juugofun	じゅうごふん
16 minutes	juuropun	じゅうろっ�ん
17 minutes	juunanafun	じゅうななふん
18 minutes	juuhachifun	じゅうはちふん
18 minutes	juuhachifun	じゅうはちふん
19 minutes	juukyufun	じゅうきゅうふん
2 minutes	nifun	にふん
20 minutes	nijuppun	にじゅっ�ん
25 minutes	nijuugofun	にじゅうごふん
3 minutes	sanpun	さんぶん
30 minutes	sanjuppun	さんじゅっ�ん
35 minutes	sanjuugofun	さんじゅうごふん
4 minutes	yonpun	よんぶん
40 minutes	yonjuppun	よんじゅっ�ん
45 minutes	yonjuugofun	よんじゅうごふん
5 minutes	gofun	ごふん
50 minutes	gojuppun	ごじゅっ�ん
55 minutes	gojuugofun	ごじゅうごふん
6 minutes	roppun	ろっぷん
60 minutes	rokujuppun	ろくじゅっ�ん
7 minutes	nanafun	ななふん
8 minutes	hachifun	はちふん
8 minutes	happun	はっぷん
9 minutes	kyuufun	きゅうふん

### A

a girl's first name	satoko	さとこ
a joke	joudan	じょうだん
acorn	donguri	どんぐり
actor	haiyuu	はいゆう
afternoon	gogo	ごご

airplane	hikouki	ひこうき
airport	kuukou	くうこう
AM	gozen	ごぜん
America	amerika	アメリカ
an announcement	happyou	はっぴょう
ant	ari	あり
apple	ringo	りんご
April	shigatsu	しがつ
August	hachigatsu	はちがつ

## B

baby	akachan	あかちゃん
banana	banana	バナナ
bank	ginkou	ぎんこう
basketball	basuketto booru	バスケットボール
bath	ofuro	おふろ
bear	kuma	くま
bed	beddo	ベッド
beef	bi-fu	ビーフ
bicycle	jitensha	じてんしゃ
big	ookii	おおきい
bird	tori	とり
birthday	tanjoubi	たんじょうび
black (adj.)	kuroi	くろい
black (noun)	kuro	くろ
blanket	moufu	もうふ
blue (adj.)	aoi	あおい
blue (noun)	ao	あお
boiled rice	gohan	ごはん
book	hon	ほん
bowl	ochawan, chawan	おちゃわん, ちゃわん
Brad Pitt (actor)	Braddo Pittto	布拉ッド・ピット
bread	pan	パン
brown (adj.)	chairoi	ちゃいろい
brown (noun)	chairo	ちゃいろ
bullet train	shinkansen	しんかんせん
bus	basu	バス
business card	meishi	めいし
but	demo	でも

## C

cake	keeki	ケーキ
calendar	karenda-	カレンダー
California	kariforunia	カリフォルニア
camera	kamera	かめら
Canada	kanada	カナダ
car	kuruma	くるま
carbonation	tansan	たんさん
carpet	juutan	じゅうたん
carrot	ninjin	にんじん
cat	neko	ねこ
cellular phone	keitaidenwa	けいたいでんわ
chair	isu	いす
change	otsuri	おつり
cheeseburger	chi-zuba-ga-	チーズバーガー

chest	mune	むね
chestnut	kuiri	くり
Chicago	shikago	シカゴ
chicken	chikin	チキン
Children's Day	kodomonohi	こどものひ
China	chuugoku	ちゅうごく
chopsticks	ohashi, hashi	おはし, はし
Christmas	kurisumasu	クリスマス
cigarettes	tabako	たばこ
city	~shi	~し
class	jugyou	じゅぎょう
clear	toumei	とうめい
clock	tokei	とけい
clothing, clothes	fuku	ふく
cockroach	gokiburi	ごきぶり
coffee	ko-hi-	コーヒー
cola	ko-ra	コーラ
cold	samui	さむい
cold drinking water	ohiya	おひや
cold to the touch	tsumetai	つめたい
color	iro	いろ
computer	konpyu-ta-	コンピューター
confusion	konran	こんらん
Constitution Day	kenpoukinenbi	けんぽうきねんび
contact	renraku	れんらく
contents	mokuji	もくじ
cow	ushi	うし
crab	kani	かに
Culture Day	bunkanohi	ぶんかのひ
cup; glass	koppu	コップ
customer, guest	okyakusan	おきゃくさん

## D

date of birth	seinengappi	せいねんがっぴ
day after tomorrow	asatte	あさって
day before yesterday	ototoi	おととい
day off, break	yasumi	やすみ
dear, longed for	natsukashii	なつかしい
December	juunigatsu	じゅうにがつ
dessert	deza-to	デザート
diagonal	naname	ななめ
diary	nikki	にっき
dictionary	jisho	じしょ
difficult	muzukashii	むずかしい
dinosaur	kyouryuu	きょうりゅう
dislike, hate	kirai	きらい
doesn't taste good	oishikunai	おいしくない
dog	inu	いぬ
dollars	doru	ドル
down	shita	した
drink, drinks	onomimono	おのみもの
drink, drinks	nomimono	のみもの
duck	ahiru	あひる

**E**

ear	mimi	みみ
east	higashi	ひがし
egg	tamago	たまご
eight o'clock	hachiji	はちじ
elephant	zou	ぞう
eleven o'clock	juuichiji	じゅういちじ
explosion	bakuhatsu	ばくはつ
eye	me	め

**F**

face	kao	かお
father	otousan	おとうさん
February	nigatsu	にがつ
finger	yubi	ゆび
fire truck	shoubousha	しょうぼうしゃ
fish	sakana	さかな
five o'clock	goji	ごじ
flag	hata	はた
flowers	hana	はな
food	tabemono	たべもの
foot; leg	ashi	あし
forgotten item	wasuremono	わすれもの
fork	fo-ku	フォーク
four o'clock	yoji	よじ
fox	kitsune	きつね
free time	hima	ひま
French fries	poteto	ポテト
Friday	kinyoubi	きんようび
friend	tomodachi	ともだち
frog	kaeru	かえる
from now / from now on	imakara	いまから
frost	shimo	しも
fruit	furu-tsu	フルーツ
fruit	kudamono	くだもの
fun park	yuuenchi	ゆうえんち
futon	futon	ふとん

**G**

gambling	gyanburu	ギャンブル
giraffe	kirin	キリン
glasses	megane	メガネ
gold	kiniro	キンイロ
Golden Week	goruden wi-ku	ゴールデンウィーク
goldfish	kingyo	キンギョ
golf	gorufu	ゴルフ
good afternoon	konnichiwa	こんにちは
good bye, farewell	sayounara	さようなら
good morning	ohayou gozaimasu	おはようございます
good night	oyasuminasai	おやすみなさい
graffiti	rakugaki	らくがき
grandfather	ojiisan	おじいさん
grandmother	obaasan	おばあさん
grapes	budou	ぶどう

grass	shibafu	しばふ
gray	guree	グレー
gray	haiiro	はいいろ
green	midori	みどり
green onion	negi	ねぎ
green tea	ocha	おちゃ
gun	teppou	てっぽう

## H

half past (:30)	han	はん
halibut	hirame	ひらめ
hallway	rouka	ろうか
hand	te	て
Harrison Ford (actor)	Harison Fo-do	ハリソン・フォード
head	atama	あたま
heat pad	kairo	かいろ
hello (on the phone)	moshimoshi	もしもし
her, she, girlfriend	kanojo	かのじょ
here, this place	koko	ここ
high pressure	kouatsu	こうあつ
him, he, boyfriend	kare	かれ
hobby	shumi	しゅみ
homework	shukudai	しゅくだい
horse	uma	うま
hot	atsui	あつい
house	ie	いえ
house fly	hae	はえ
How are you? (Are you fine?)	genki desu ka	げんきですか
How many cylindrical objects?	nanbon	なんぼん
How many round objects?	nanko	なんこ
How many thin and flat objects?	nanmai	なんまい
How many things?	ikutsu	いくつ
How much?	ikura	いくら

## I

I, me (male or female)	watashi	わたし
I, me (males only)	boku	ぼく
ice cream	aisu kuri-mu	アイス・クリーム
I'm fine	genki desu	げんきです
imitation	mane	まね
Independence Day	dokuritsu kinenbi	独立記念日
inside	naka	なか
internet	inta-netto	インターネット

## J

January	ichigatsu	いちがつ
Japan	nihon	にほん
Japanese language	nihongo	にほんご
Japanese teacher	nihongo no sensei	にほんごの せんせい
juice	ju-su	ジュース
July	shichigatsu	しちがつ
June	rokugatsu	ろくがつ

**K**

key  
kindergarten  
Kobe (city)  
Korea

kagi  
youchien  
koube  
kankoku

かぎ  
ようちえん  
こうべ  
かんこく

**L**

landmark  
language  
laptop computer  
Las Vegas  
last month  
last week  
last year  
left  
lemon  
lettuce  
light blue  
like  
lion  
liquid, fluid  
lizard  
lobster  
Los Angeles  
low pressure

mejirushi  
~go  
no-to pasokon  
rasu begasu  
sengetsu  
senshuu  
kyonen  
hidari  
remon  
retasu  
mizuiro  
suki  
raion  
ekitai  
tokage  
robusta-  
rosanzerusu  
teiatsu

めじるし  
~ご  
ノートパソコン  
ラスベガス  
せんげつ  
せんしゅう  
きょねん  
ひだり  
レモン  
レタス  
みずいろ  
すき  
ライオン  
えきたい  
とかげ  
ロブスター  
ロサンゼルス  
ていあつ

**M**

magazine  
March  
married couple  
May  
maybe  
meat  
menu  
milk  
mirror  
miso soup  
Monday  
money  
monkey  
monster  
moonlight  
morning  
mother  
mouse  
mouth  
movie  
Mr., Ms., Mrs., Miss  
music

zasshi  
sangatsu  
fuufu  
gogatsu  
tabun  
niku  
menu-  
miruku  
kagami  
misoshiru  
getsuyoubi  
okane  
saru  
kaijuu  
gekkou  
gozen  
okaasan  
nezumi  
kuchi  
eiga  
~san (after name)  
ongaku

ざっし  
さんがつ  
ふうふ  
ごがつ  
たぶん  
にく  
メニュー  
ミルク  
かがみ  
みそしる  
げつようび  
おかね  
さる  
かいじゅう  
げっこう  
ごぜん  
おかあさん  
ねずみ  
くち  
えいが  
さん  
おんがく

**N**

name  
nationality  
new

namae  
~jin  
atarashii

なまえ  
~じん  
あたらしい

New Year's Day	gantan	がんたん
newspaper	shinbun	しんぶん
next month	raigetsu	らいげつ
next week	raishuu	らいしゅう
next year	rainen	らいねん
nice, good	ii, yoi	いい、よい
nine o'clock	kuji	くじ
no	iie	いいえ
north	kita	きた
nose	hana	はな
November	juuichigatsu	じゅういちがつ
now	ima	いま

## O

October	juugatsu	じゅうがつ
of course	mochiron	もちろん
Oh!	a!!	あっ！
old	furui	ふるい
old person	roujin	ろうじん
one o'clock	ichiji	いちじ
onion	tamanegi	たまねぎ
orange (color)	orenji	オレンジ
orange (fruit)	mikan / orenji	みかん / オレンジ
outside	soto	そと
over there, that place over there	asoko	あそこ

## P

panda	panda	パンダ
pants	zubon	ズボン
paper	kami	kami
part-time job	arubaito	アルバイト
party	pa-ti-	パーティー
patrol car	patoka-	パトカー
PC (computer)	pasokon	パソコン
peach	momo	もも
pen	pen	ペン
pencil	enpitsu	えんぴつ
pepper	koshou	こしょう
pig	buta	ぶた
pigeon; dove	hato	はと
pillow	makura	まくら
pink	pinku	ピンク
pizza	piza	ピザ
plate	(o) sara	(お)さら
PM	gogo	ごご
potato	poteto	ポテト
prefecture	~ken	~けん
present, gift	purezento	プレゼント
purple	murasaki	むらさき

## R

rabbit	usagi	うさぎ
radish	daikon	だいこん
rare (adj.)	mezurashii	めずらしい

really dislike, really hate  
 really like, like a lot  
 reason  
 red  
 red  
 refrigerator  
 region  
 restaurant  
 restroom  
 right  
 rise in price  
 rock  
 roof  
 rumor

daikirai  
 daisuki  
 riyuu  
 aka  
 akai  
 reizouko  
 chiiki  
 resutoran  
 otearai  
 migi  
 neage  
 iwa  
 yane  
 uwasa

だいきらい  
 だいすき  
 りゆう  
 あか  
 あかい  
 れいぞうこ  
 ちいき  
 レストラン  
 おてあらい  
 みぎ  
 ねあげ  
 いわ  
 やね  
 うわさ

## S

salt  
 sand box  
 sandwich  
 sandwich (short vers.)  
 Saturday  
 school  
 screw  
 September  
 seven o'clock  
 sheep  
 shiny  
 ship; boat  
 shoe  
 shopping  
 shrimp  
 sightseeing  
 silver  
 six o'clock  
 small  
 snack, snacks  
 snake  
 soap  
 soccer  
 soldier  
 south  
 spaghetti  
 spring  
 spoon  
 Sports Day  
 squid  
 star (in the sky)  
 state  
 steel  
 storm  
 strawberry  
 Sunday  
 surgery  
 sushi

shio  
 sunaba  
 sandoicchi  
 sando  
 doyoubi  
 gakkou  
 neji  
 kugatsu  
 shichiji  
 hitsuji  
 pikapika  
 fune  
 kutsu  
 kaimono  
 ebi  
 kankou  
 giniro  
 rokuji  
 chiihai  
 okashi  
 hebi  
 sekken  
 sakka-  
 heitai  
 minami  
 supagetti-  
 haru  
 supu-n  
 taiikunohi  
 ika  
 hoshi  
 ~shuu  
 kane  
 arashi  
 ichigo  
 nichiyoubi  
 shujutsu  
 sushi

しお  
 すなば  
 サンドイッチ  
 サンド  
 どようび  
 がっこう  
 ねじ  
 くがつ  
 しちじ  
 ひつじ  
 ぴかぴか  
 ふね  
 くつ  
 かいもの  
 えび  
 かんこう  
 ぎんいろ  
 ろくじ  
 ちいさい  
 おかし  
 へび  
 せっけん  
 サッカー  
 へいたい  
 みなみ  
 スパゲッティー  
 はる  
 スプーン  
 たいいくのひ  
 いか  
 ほし  
 ~しゅう  
 かね  
 あらし  
 いちご  
 にちようび  
 しゅじゅつ  
 すし

**T**

tastes good, delicious	oishii	おいしい
teacher	sensei	せいせい
telephone	denwa	でんわ
television	terebi	テレビ
ten o'clock	juuji	じゅうじ
thank you, thanks	arigatou	ありがとう
that one (out of 2)	socchi	そっち
that one (out of 3 or more)	sore	それ
that one over there (out of 2)	acchi	あっち
that one over there (out of 3 or more)	are	あれ
That's great. / That's awesome.	sugoi desu ne	すごいですね
there, that place	soko	そこ
thief	dorobou	どろぼう
this month	kongetsu	こんげつ
this one (out of 2)	kocchi	こっち
this one (out of 3 or more)	kore	これ
this week	konshuu	こんしゅう
this year	kotoshi	ことし
three o'clock	sanji	さんじ
thunder; lightning	kaminari	かみなり
Thursday	mokuyoubi	もくようび
tickets	chiketto	チケット
to come	kuru	くる
to drink water	mizuwo nomu	みずを のむ
to go	iku	いく
to move an item	hakobu	はこぶ
to return	kaeru	かえる
to stand out	medatsu	めだつ
to understand, know	wakaru	わかる
to undress	nugu	ぬぐ
today	kyou	きょう
toilet	toire	トイレ
tomato	tomato	トマト
tomorrow	ashita	あした
tooth, teeth	ha	は
toothbrush	haburashi	ハブラシ
tortoise; turtle	kame	かめ
towel	taoru	タオル
train	densha	でんしゃ
trash can	gomibako	ごみばこ
travel	ryokou	りょこう
tricycle	sanrinsha	さんりんしゃ
Tuesday	kayoubi	かようび
tuna	maguro	まぐろ
twelve o'clock	juuniji	じゅうにじ
two o'clock	niji	にじ

**U**

umbrella	kasa	かさ
up	ue	うえ

**V**

vegetable  
violence

yasai  
ranbou

やさい  
ランボウ

**W**

want  
warm, luke warm  
water  
watermelon  
Wednesday  
Well, then~  
west  
what color?  
what day of the month?  
what day of the week?  
what language?  
what month?  
what nationality?  
what time?  
what year?  
what?  
what?, which?, what kind of?  
when?  
where?, what place?  
which one (three or more)  
which one (two items)  
white (adj.)  
white (noun)  
who?  
wife  
window  
wisdom  
work  
wrinkles

hoshii  
nurui  
mizu  
suika  
suiyoubi  
ja, jaa  
nishi  
nani iro  
nannichi  
nanyoubi  
nanigo  
nangatsu  
nanjin  
nanji  
nannen  
nani  
nanno ?  
itsu  
doko  
dore  
docchi  
shiroi  
shiro  
dare  
oyomesan  
mado  
chie  
shigoto  
shiwa

ほしい  
ぬるい  
みず  
すいか  
すいようび  
じゃ、じゃあ  
にし  
なにいろ  
なんにち  
なんようび  
なにご  
なんがつ  
なにじん  
なんじ  
なんねん  
なに  
なんの？  
いつ  
どこ  
どれ  
どっち  
しろい  
しろ  
だれ  
およめさん  
まど  
ちえ  
しごと  
しわ

**Y**

yellow (adj.)  
yellow (noun)  
yen  
yes  
yesterday  
Yoshio - common boy's first name  
you

kiroi  
kiiro  
en  
hai  
kinou  
Yoshio  
anata

きいろい  
きいろ  
えん  
はい  
きのう  
よしお  
あなた

## Ro-maji Glossary

---

### A

a!!	Oh!	あっ！
acchi	that one over there (out of 2)	あっち
ahiru	duck	あひる
aisu kuri-mu	ice cream	アイス・クリーム
aka	red	あか
akachan	baby	あかちゃん
akai	red	あかい
amerika	America	アメリカ
anata	you	あなた
ao	blue (noun)	あお
aoi	blue (adj.)	あおい
arashi	a storm	あらし
are	that one over there (out of 3 or more)	あれ
ari	ant	あり
arigatou	thank you, thanks	ありがとう
arubaito	part-time job	アルバイト
asatte	day after tomorrow	あさって
ashi	foot; leg	あし
ashita	tomorrow	あした
asoko	over there, that place over there	あそこ
atama	head	あたま
atarashii	new	あたらしい
atsui	hot	あつい

### B

bakuhatsu	explosion	ばくはつ
banana	banana	バナナ
basu	bus	バス
basuketto booru	basketball	バスケットボール
beddo	bed	ベッド
bi-fu	beef	ビーフ
boku	I, me (males only)	ぼく
Braddo Pitt	Brad Pitt (actor)	布拉ッド・ピット
budou	grapes	ぶどう
bunkanohi	Culture Day	ぶんかのひ
buta	pig	ぶた

### C

chairo	brown (noun)	ちゃいろ
chairoi	brown (adj.)	ちゃいろい
chawan	bowl	ちゃわん
chie	wisdom	ちえ
chiiki	region	ちいき
chiisai	small	ちいさい
chiketto	tickets	チケット
chikin	chicken	チキン
chi-zuba-ga-	cheeseburger	チーズバーガー
chuugoku	China	ちゅうごく

**D**

daikirai	really dislike, really hate	だいきらい
daikon	radish	だいこん
daisuki	really like, like a lot	だいすき
dare	who?	だれ
demo	but	でも
densha	train	でんしゃ
denwa	telephone	でんわ
deza-to	dessert	デザート
docchi	which one (two items)	どっち
doko	where?, what place?	どこ
dokuritsu kinenbi	Independence Day	どくりつきねんび
donguri	acorn	どんぐり
dore	which one (three or more)	どれ
dorobou	a thief	どろぼう
doru	dollars	ドル
doyoubi	Saturday	どようび

**E**

ebi	shrimp	えび
eiga	movie	えいが
ekitai	liquid, fluid	えきたい
en	yen	えん
enpitsu	pencil	えんぴつ

**F**

fo-ku	fork	フォーク
fuku	clothing, clothes	ふく
fune	ship; boat	ふね
furui	old	ふるい
furu-tsū	fruit	フルーツ
futon	futon	ふとん
fuufu	married couple	ふうふ

**G**

gakkou	school	がっこう
gantan	New Year's Day	がんたん
gekkou	moonlight	げっこう
genki desu	I'm fine	げんき です
genki desu ka	How are you? (Are you fine?)	げんき ですか
getsuyoubi	Monday	げつ曜日
giniro	silver	ぎんいろ
ginkou	bank	ぎんこう
go	~ language	~ご
go	5	ご
gofun	5 minutes	ごふん
gogatsu	May	ごがつ
gogo	PM (also means afternoon)	ごご
gohan	boiled rice	ごはん
goji	five o'clock	ごじ
gojuppon	50 minutes	ごじゅっふん
gojuugofun	55 minutes	ごじゅうごふん
gokiburi	cockroach	ごきぶり
gomibako	trash can	ごみばこ

goruden wi-ku  
gorufu  
gozen  
guree  
gyanburu

Golden Week  
golf  
AM (also means morning)  
gray  
gambling

ゴールデンウィーク  
ゴルフ  
ごぜん  
グレー  
ギャンブル

**H**

ha  
haburashi  
hachi  
hachifun  
hachigatsu  
hachiji  
hae  
hai  
haiiro  
haiyuu  
hakobu  
han  
hana  
hana  
happun  
happyou  
Harison Fo-do  
haru  
hashi  
hata  
hato  
hebi  
heitai  
hidari  
higashi  
hikouki  
hima  
hirame  
hitsuji  
hon  
hoshi  
hoshii

tooth, teeth  
toothbrush  
8  
8 minutes  
August  
eight o'clock  
house fly  
yes  
gray  
actor  
to move an item  
half past (:30)  
flowers  
nose  
8 minutes  
an announcement  
Harrison Ford (actor)  
spring  
chopsticks  
flag  
pigeon; dove  
snake  
soldier  
left  
east  
airplane  
free time  
halibut  
sheep  
book  
star (in the sky)  
want

は  
ハブラシ  
はち  
はちふん  
はちがつ  
はちじ  
はえ  
はい  
はいいろ  
はいゆう  
はこぶ  
はん  
はな  
はな  
はっふん  
はっぴょう  
ハリソン・フォード  
はる  
はし  
はた  
はと  
へび  
へいたい  
ひだり  
ひがし  
ひこうき  
ひま  
ひらめ  
ひつじ  
ほん  
ほし  
ほしい

**I**

ichi  
ichigatsu  
ichigo  
ichiji  
ie  
ii、 yoi  
iie  
ika  
iku  
ikura  
ikutsu  
ima  
imakara

1  
January  
strawberry  
one o'clock  
house  
nice, good  
no  
squid  
to go  
How much?  
How many things?  
now  
from now / from now on

いち  
いちがつ  
いちご  
いちじ  
いえ  
いい、 よい  
いいえ  
いか  
いく  
いくら  
いくつ  
いま  
いまから

inta-netto  
inu  
ippun  
iro  
isu  
itsu  
iwa

internet  
dog  
1 minute  
color  
chair  
when?  
rock

インターネット  
いぬ  
いっ�ん  
いろ  
isu  
いつ  
いわ

**J**

ja, jaa  
jin  
jisho  
jitensha  
joudan  
jugyou  
juppun  
ju-su  
juu  
juugatsu  
juugofun  
juuhachifun  
juuhachifun  
juuichigatsu  
juuichiiji  
juuppun  
juuji  
juukyuufun  
juunanafun  
juunifun  
juunigatsu  
juuniji  
juuropun  
juusanpun  
juutan  
juuyonpun

well, then~  
~ nationality  
dictionary  
bicycle  
a joke  
class  
10 minutes  
juice  
10  
October  
15 minutes  
18 minutes  
18 minutes  
November  
eleven o'clock  
11 minutes  
ten o'clock  
19 minutes  
17 minutes  
12 minutes  
December  
twelve o'clock  
16 minutes  
13 minutes  
carpet  
14 minutes

じゃ、じゃあ  
~じん  
じしょ  
じてんしゃ  
じょうだん  
じゅぎょう  
じゅっ�ん  
ジュース  
じゅう  
じゅうがつ  
じゅうごふん  
じゅうはちふん  
じゅうはちふん  
じゅういちがつ  
じゅういちじ  
じゅういっ�ん  
じゅうじ  
じゅうきゅうふん  
じゅうななふん  
じゅうにふん  
じゅうにがつ  
じゅうにじ  
じゅうろっ�ん  
じゅうさんぶん  
じゅうたん  
じゅうよんぶん

**K**

kaeru  
kaeru  
kagami  
kagi  
kaijuu  
kaimono  
kairo  
kame  
kamera  
kami  
kaminari  
kanada  
kane  
kani  
kankoku  
kankou  
kanojo  
kao

frog  
to return  
mirror  
key  
a monster  
shopping  
heat pad  
tortoise; turtle  
camera  
paper  
thunder; lightning  
Canada  
steel  
crab  
Korea  
sightseeing  
her, she, girlfriend  
face

かえる  
かえる  
かがみ  
かぎ  
かいじゅう  
かいもの  
かいろう  
かめ  
かめら  
かみ  
かみなり  
カナダ  
かね  
かに  
かんこく  
かんこう  
かのじょ  
かお

kare	him, he, boyfriend	かれ
karenda–	calendar	カレンダー
kariforunia	California	カリフォルニア
kasa	umbrella	かさ
kayoubi	Tuesday	かようび
keeki	cake	ケーキ
keitaidenwa	cellular phone	けいたいでんわ
ken	~ Prefecture	~けん
kenpoukinenbi	Constitution Day	けんぽうきねんび
kiiro	yellow (noun)	きいろ
kiroi	yellow (adj.)	きいろい
kingyo	goldfish	きんぎょ
kiniro	gold	きんいろ
kinou	yesterday	きのう
kinyoubi	Friday	きんようび
kirai	dislike, hate	きらい
kirin	giraffe	きりん
kita	north	きた
kitsune	fox	きつね
kocchi	this one (out of 2)	こっち
kodomonohi	Children's Day	こどものひ
ko-hi–	coffee	コーヒー
koko	here, this place	ここ
kongetsu	this month	こんげつ
konnichiwa	good afternoon	こんにちは
konpyu-ta–	computer	コンピューター
konran	confusion	こんらん
konshuu	this week	こんしゅう
koppu	cup; glass	コップ
ko-ra	cola	コーラ
kore	this one (out of 3 or more)	これ
koshou	pepper	こしょう
kotoshi	this year	ことし
kouatsu	high pressure	こうあつ
koube	Kobe (city)	こうべ
ku	9	く
kuchi	mouth	くち
kudamono	fruit	くだもの
kugatsu	September	くがつ
kuji	nine o'clock	くじ
kuma	bear	くま
kuri	chestnut	くり
kurisumasu	Christmas	クリスマス
kuro	black (noun)	くろ
kuroi	black (adj.)	くろい
kuru	to come	くる
kuruma	car	くるま
kutsu	shoe	くつ
kuukou	airport	くうこう
kyonen	last year	きょねん
kyou	today	きょう
kyouryuu	dinosaur	きょうりゅう
kyuu	9	きゅう
kyuufun	9 minutes	きゅうふん

**M**

mado	window	まど
maguro	tuna	まぐろ
makura	pillow	まくら
mane	imitation	まね
maru	circle, zero	まる
me	eye	め
medatsu	to stand out	めだつ
megane	glasses	めがね
meishi	business card	めいし
mejirushi	landmark	めじるし
menu-	menu	メニュー
mezurashii	rare (adj.)	めずらしい
midori	green	みどり
migi	right	みぎ
mikan / orenji	orange (fruit)	みかん / オレンジ
mimi	ear	みみ
minami	south	みなみ
miruku	milk	ミルク
misoshiru	miso soup	みそしる
mizu	water	みず
mizuiro	light blue	みずいろ
mizuwo nomu	to drink water	みずを のむ
mochiron	of course	もちろん
mokujii	contents	もくじ
mokuyoubi	Thursday	もくようび
momo	peach	もも
moshimoshi	hello (on the phone)	もしもし
moufu	blanket	もうふ
mune	chest	むね
murasaki	purple	むらさき
muzukashii	difficult	むずかしい

**N**

naka	inside	なか
nameae	name	なまえ
nana	7	なな
nanafun	7 minutes	ななふん
naname	diagonal	ななめ
nanbon	How many cylindrical objects?	なんぼん
nangatsu	what month?	なんがつ
nani	what?	なに
nani iro	what color?	なにいろ
nanigo	what language?	なにご
nanijin	what nationality?	なにじん
nanji	what time?	なんじ
nanko	How many round objects?	なんこ
nanmai	How many thin and flat objects?	なんまい
nannen	what year?	なんねん
nannichi	what day of the month?	なんにち
nanno ?	what? which? what kind of?	なんの?
nanyoubi	what day of the week?	なんようび
natsukashii	dear, longed for	なつかしい
neage	a rise in price	ねあげ
negi	green onion	ねぎ

neji	a screw	ねじ
neko	cat	ねこ
nezumi	mouse	ねずみ
ni	2	に
nichiyoubi	Sunday	にちようび
nifun	2 minutes	にふん
nigatsu	February	にがつ
nihon	Japan	にほん
nihongo	Japanese language	にほんご
nihongo no sensei	Japanese teacher	にほんごの せんせい
niji	two o'clock	にじ
nijuppun	20 minutes	にじゅっ�ん
nijuugofun	25 minutes	にじゅうごふん
nikki	diary	にっき
niku	meat	にく
ninjin	carrot	にんじん
nishi	west	にし
nomimono	a drink, drinks	のみもの
no-to pasokon	laptop computer	ノートパソコン
nugu	to undress	ぬぐ
nurui	warm, luke warm	ぬるい

## O

obaasan	grandmother	おばあさん
ocha	green tea	おちゃ
ochawan	bowl	おちゃわん
ofuro	bath	おふろ
ohashi	chopsticks	おはし
ohayou gozaimasu	good morning	おはよう ございます
ohiya	cold drinking water	おひや
oishii	tastes good, delicious	おいしい
oishikunai	doesn't taste good	おいしくない
ojiisan	grandfather	おじいさん
okaasan	mother	おかあさん
okane	money	おかげ
okashi	a snack	おかし
okyakusan	a customer or guest	おきゃくさん
ongaku	music	おんがく
onomimono	a drink	おのみもの
ookii	big	おおきい
orenji	orange (color)	オレンジ
osara	plate	おさら
otearai	restroom	おてあらい
ototoi	day before yesterday	おととい
otousan	father	おとうさん
otsuri	change	おつり
oyasuminasai	good night	おやすみなさい
oyomesan	wife	およめさん

## P

pan	bread	パン
panda	panda	パンダ
pasokon	PC (computer)	パソコン
pa-ti-	party	パーティー

patoka-	patrol car	パトカー
pen	pen	ペン
pikapika	shiny	ぴかぴか
pinku	pink	ピンク
piza	pizza	ピザ
poteto	French fries	ポテト
poteto	potato	ポテト
purezento	present, gift	プレゼント

## R

raigetsu	next month	らいげつ
rainen	next year	らいねん
raion	lion	ライオン
raishuu	next week	らいしゅう
rakugaki	graffiti	らくがき
ranbou	violence	らんぼう
rasu begasu	Las Vegas	ラスベガス
rei	zero, 0	れい
reizouko	refrigerator	れいぞうこ
remon	lemon	レモン
renraku	contact	れんらく
resotoran	restaurant	レストラン
retasu	lettuce	レタス
ringo	apple	りんご
riyuu	a reason	リュウ
robusuta-	lobster	ロブスター
roku	6	ろく
rokugatsu	June	ろくがつ
rokuchi	six o'clock	ろくじ
rokujupun	60 minutes	ろくじゅっ�ん
roppun	6 minutes	ろっ�ん
rosanzerusu	Los Angeles	ロサンゼルス
roujin	old person	ろうじん
rouka	hallway	ろうか
ryokou	travel	りょこう

## S

sakana	fish	さかな
sakka-	soccer	サッカー
samui	cold	さむい
san	3	さん
san (after name)	Mr., Ms., Mrs., Miss	さん
sando	sandwich (short vers.)	サンド
sandoicchi	sandwich	サンドイッチ
sangatsu	March	さんがつ
sanji	three o'clock	さんじ
sanjupun	30 minutes	さんじゅっ�ん
sanjuugofun	35 minutes	さんじゅうごふん
sanpun	3 minutes	さんぶん
sanrinsha	tricycle	さんりんしゃ
sara	plate	さら
saru	monkey	さる
satoko	a girl's first name	さとこ
sayounara	good bye, farewell	さようなら
seinengappi	date of birth	せいねんがっぴ

sekken	soap	せっけん
sengetsu	last month	せんげつ
sensei	teacher	せんせい
senshuu	last week	せんしゅう
shi	~ City	~し
shi	4	し
shibafu	grass	しばふ
shichi	7	しち
shichigatsu	July	しちがつ
shichiji	seven o'clock	しちじ
shigatsu	April	しがつ
shigoto	work	しごと
shikago	Chicago	シカゴ
shimo	frost	しも
shinbun	newspaper	しんぶん
shinkansen	bullet train	しんかんせん
shio	salt	しお
shiro	white	しろ
shiroi	white	しろい
shita	down	した
shiwa	wrinkles	しわ
shoubousha	fire truck	しょうぼうしゃ
shujutsu	surgery	しゅじゅつ
shukudai	homework	しゅくだい
shumi	hobby	しゅみ
shuu	~ State	~しゅう
socchi	that one (out of 2)	そっち
soko	there, that place	そこ
sore	that one (out of 3 or more)	それ
soto	outside	そと
sugoi desu ne	That's great. / That's awesome.	すごいですね
suika	watermelon	すいか
suiyoubi	Wednesday	すいようび
suki	like	すき
sunaba	sand box	すなば
supagetti-	spaghetti	スパゲッティー
supu-n	spoon	スプーン
sushi	sushi	すし

**T**

tabako	cigarettes	たばこ
tabemono	food	たべもの
tabun	maybe	たぶん
taiikunohi	Sports Day	たいいくのひ
tamago	egg	たまご
tamanegi	onion	たまねぎ
tanjoubi	birthday	たんじょうび
tansan	carbonation	たんさん
taoru	towel	タオル
te	hand	て
teiatsu	low pressure	ていあつ
teppou	gun	てっぽう
terebi	television	テレビ
toire	toilet	トイレ
tokage	lizard	とかげ

tokei	clock	とけい
tomato	tomato	トマト
tomodachi	friend	ともだち
tori	bird	とり
toumei	clear	とうめい
tsumetai	cold to the touch	つめたい

**U**

ue	up	うえ
uma	horse	うま
usagi	rabbit	うさぎ
ushi	cow	うし
uwasa	a rumor	うわさ

**W**

wakaru	to understand, know	わかる
wasuremono	forgotten item	わすれもの
watashi	I, me (male or female)	わたし

**Y**

yane	roof	やね
yasai	vegetable	やさい
yasumi	day off, break	やすみ
yoji	four o'clock	よじ
yon	4	よん
yonjuppun	40 minutes	よんじゅっ�ん
yonjuugofun	45 minutes	よんじゅうごふん
yonpun	4 minutes	よんぶん
Yoshio	a common boy's first name	よしお
youchien	kindergarten	ようちえん
yubi	finger	ゆび
yuuenchi	fun park	ゆうえんち

**Z**

zasshi	magazine	ざっし
zero	zero, 0	ゼロ
zou	elephant	ぞう
zubon	pants	ズボン

## Kana Glossary

### あ

アイス・クリーム	ice cream	aisu kuri-mu
あお	blue (noun)	ao
あおい	blue (adj.)	aoi
あか	red	aka
あかい	red	akai
あかちゃん	baby	akachan
あさって	day after tomorrow	asatte
あし	foot; leg	ashi
あした	tomorrow	ashita
あそこ	over there, that place over there	asoko
あたま	head	atama
あたらしい	new	atarashii
あっ！	Oh!	a!!
あつい	hot	atsui
あっち	that one over there (out of 2)	acchi
あなた	you	anata
あひる	duck	ahiru
アメリカ	America	amerika
あらし	a storm	arashi
あり	ant	ari
ありがとう	thank you, thanks	arigatou
アルバイト	part-time job	arubaito
あれ	that one over there (out of 3 or more)	are

### い

いい、よい	nice, good	ii、yoい
いいえ	no	iie *
いえ	house	ie
いか	squid	ika
いく	to go	iku
いくつ	How many things?	ikutsu
いくら	How much?	ikura
いす	chair	isu
いち	1	ichi
いちがつ	January	ichigatsu
いちご	strawberry	ichigo
いちじ	one o'clock	ichiji
いつ	when?	itsu
いっぷん	1 minute	ippun
いぬ	dog	inu
いま	now	ima
いまから	from now / from now on	imakara
いろ	color	iro
いわ	rock	iwa
インターネット	internet	inta-netto

# う

うえ  
うさぎ  
うし  
うま  
うわさ

up  
rabbit  
cow  
horse  
a rumor

ue  
usagi  
ushi  
uma  
uwasa

# え

えいが  
えきたい  
えび  
えん  
えんぴつ

movie  
liquid, fluid  
shrimp  
yen  
pencil

eiga  
ekitai  
ebi  
en  
enpitsu

# お

おいしい  
おいしくない  
おおきい  
おかあさん  
おかし  
おかね  
おきゃくさん  
おさら  
おじいさん  
おちゃ  
おちゃわん  
おつり  
おてあらい  
おとうさん  
おととい  
おのみもの  
おばあさん  
おはし  
おはよう ございます  
おひや  
おふろ  
おやすみなさい  
およめさん  
オレンジ  
おんがく

tastes good, delicious  
doesn't taste good  
big  
mother  
a snack  
money  
a customer or guest  
plate  
grandfather  
green tea  
bowl  
change  
restroom  
father  
day before yesterday  
a drink  
grandmother  
chopsticks  
good morning  
cold drinking water  
bath  
good night  
wife  
orange (color)  
music

oishii  
oishikunai  
ookii  
okaasan  
okashi  
okane  
okyakusan  
osara  
ojiisan  
ocha  
ochawan  
otsuri  
otearai  
otousan  
ototoi  
onomimono  
obaasan  
ohashi  
ohayou gozaimasu  
ohiya  
ofuro  
oyasuminasai  
oyomesan  
orenji  
ongaku

# か

かいじゅう  
かいもの  
かいろう  
かえる  
かえる  
かお  
かがみ

a monster  
shopping  
heat pad  
frog  
to return  
face  
mirror

kaijuu  
kaimono  
kairo  
kaeru  
kaeru  
kao  
kagami

かぎ	key	kagi
かさ	umbrella	kasa
がっこう	school	gakkou
カナダ	Canada	kanada
かに	crab	kani
かね	steel	kane
かのじょ	her, she, girlfriend	kanojo
かみ	paper	kami
かみなり	thunder; lightning	kaminari
かめ	tortoise; turtle	kame
かめら	camera	kamera
かようび	Tuesday	kayoubi
カリフォルニア	California	kariforunia
かれ	him, he, boyfriend	kare
カレンダー	calendar	karenda-
かんこう	sightseeing	kankou
かんこく	Korea	kankoku
がんたん	New Year's Day	gantan

## き

きいろ	yellow (noun)	kiiro
きいろい	yellow (adj.)	kiroi
きた	north	kita
きつね	fox	kitsune
きのう	yesterday	kinou
ギャンブル	gambling	gyanburu
きゅう	9	kyuu
きゅうふん	9 minutes	kyuufun
きょう	today	kyou
きょうりゅう	dinosaur	kyouryuu
きょねん	last year	kyonen
きらい	dislike, hate	kirai
きりん	giraffe	kirin
きんいろ	gold	kiniro
ぎんいろ	silver	giniro
きんぎょ	goldfish	kingyo
ぎんこう	bank	ginkou
きんようび	Friday	kinyoubi

## く

く	9	ku
くうこう	airport	kuukou
くがつ	September	kugatsu
くじ	nine o'clock	kuji
くだもの	fruit	kudamono
くち	mouth	kuchi
くつ	shoe	kutsu
くま	bear	kuma
くり	chestnut	kuri
クリスマス	Christmas	kurisumasu
くる	to come	kuru
くるま	car	kuruma

グレー  
くろ  
くろい

gray  
black (noun)  
black (adj.)

guree  
kuro  
kuroi

## け

けいたいでんわ  
ケーキ  
げっこう  
げつようび  
けん  
げんき です  
げんき ですか  
けんぽうきねんび

cellular phone  
cake  
moonlight  
Monday  
~ Prefecture  
I'm fine  
How are you? (Are you fine?)  
Constitution Day

keitaidenwa  
keeki  
gekkou  
getsuyoubi  
~ken  
genki desu  
genki desu ka  
kenpoukinenbi

## こ

ご  
ご  
こうあつ  
こうべ  
コーヒー  
コーラ  
ゴールデンウィーク  
ごがつ  
ごきぶり  
ここ  
ごご  
ごじ  
ごじゅうごふん  
ごじゅっへん  
こしょう  
ごぜん  
こっち  
コップ  
ことし  
こどものひ  
ごはん  
ごふん  
ごみばこ  
ゴルフ  
これ  
こんげつ  
こんしゅう  
こんにちは  
コンピューター  
こんらん

~ language  
5  
high pressure  
Kobe (city)  
coffee  
cola  
Golden Week  
May  
cockroach  
here, this place  
PM (also means afternoon)  
five o'clock  
55 minutes  
50 minutes  
pepper  
AM (also means morning)  
this one (out of 2)  
cup; glass  
this year  
Children's Day  
boiled rice  
5 minutes  
trash can  
golf  
this one (out of 3 or more)  
this month  
this week  
good afternoon  
computer  
confusion

~go  
go  
kouatsu  
koube  
ko-hi-  
ko-ra  
goruden wi-ku  
gogatsu  
gokiburi  
koko  
gogo  
goji  
gojuugofun  
gojuppun  
koshou  
gozen  
kocchi  
koppu  
kotoshi  
kodomonohi  
gohan  
gofun  
gomibako  
gorufu  
kore  
kongetsu  
konshuu  
konnichiwa  
konpyu-ta-  
konran

## さ

さかな  
サッカー  
ざっし  
さとこ

fish  
soccer  
magazine  
a girl's first name

sakana  
sakka-  
zasshi  
satoko

さむい	cold	samui
さようなら	good bye, farewell	sayounara
さら	plate	sara
さる	monkey	saru
さん	3	san
さん	Mr., Ms., Mrs., Miss	san (after name)
さんがつ	March	sangatsu
さんじ	three o'clock	sanji
さんじゅうごふん	35 minutes	sanjuugofun
さんじゅっ�ん	30 minutes	sanjuppun
サンド	sandwich (short vers.)	sando
サンドイッチ	sandwich	sandoicchi
さんぶん	3 minutes	sanpun
さんりんしゃ	tricycle	sanrinsha

## し

し	~ City	~shi
し	4	shi
しお	salt	shio
シカゴ	Chicago	shikago
しがつ	April	shigatsu
しごと	work	shigoto
じしょ	dictionary	jisho
した	down	shita
しち	7	shichi
しちがつ	July	shichigatsu
しちじ	seven o'clock	shichiji
じてんしゃ	bicycle	jitensha
しばふ	grass	shibafu
しも	frost	shimo
じゃ、じゃあ	well, then~	ja, jaa
しゅう	~ State	~shuu
じゅう	10	juu
じゅういちがつ	November	juuichigatsu
じゅういちじ	eleven o'clock	juuichiji
じゅういっ�ん	11 minutes	juuippun
じゅうがつ	October	juugatsu
じゅうきゅうふん	19 minutes	juukyufun
じゅうごふん	15 minutes	juugofun
じゅうさんぶん	13 minutes	juusanpun
じゅうじ	ten o'clock	juuji
ジース	juice	ju-su
じゅうたん	carpet	juutan
じゅうななふん	17 minutes	juunananafun
じゅうにがつ	December	juunigatsu
じゅうにじ	twelve o'clock	juuniji
じゅうにふん	12 minutes	juunifun
じゅうはちふん	18 minutes	juuhachifun
じゅうはちふん	18 minutes	juuhachifun
じゅうよんぶん	14 minutes	juuyonpun
じゅうろっぁん	16 minutes	juuroppun
じゅぎょう	class	jugyou
しゅくだい	homework	shukudai
しゅじゅつ	surgery	shujutsu

じゅっ�ん  
しゅみ  
じょうだん  
しょうぼうしゃ  
しろ  
しろい  
しわ  
じん  
しんかんせん  
しんぶん

10 minutes  
hobby  
a joke  
fire truck  
white  
white  
wrinkles  
~ nationality  
bullet train  
newspaper

juppun  
shumi  
joudan  
shoubousha  
shiro  
shiroi  
shiwa  
~jin  
shinkansen  
shinbun

## す

すいか  
すいようび  
すき  
すごい です ね  
すし  
すなば  
スパゲッティー<sup>ー</sup>  
スプーン  
ズボン

watermelon  
Wednesday  
like  
That's great. / That's awesome.  
sushi  
sand box  
spaghetti  
spoon  
pants

suika  
suiyoubi  
suki  
sugoi desu ne  
sushi  
sunaba  
supagetti-  
supu-n  
zubon

## せ

せいねんがっぴ  
せっけん  
ゼロ  
せんげつ  
せんしゅう  
せんせい

date of birth  
soap  
zero, 0  
last month  
last week  
teacher

seinengappi  
sekken  
zero  
sengetsu  
senshuu  
sensei

## そ

ぞう  
そこ  
そっち  
そと  
それ

elephant  
there, that place  
that one (out of 2)  
outside  
that one (out of 3 or more)

zou  
soko  
socchi  
soto  
sore

## た

たいいくのひ  
だいきらい  
だいこん  
だいすき  
タオル  
たばこ  
たぶん  
たべもの  
たまご  
たまねぎ  
だれ  
たんさん

Sports Day  
really dislike, really hate  
radish  
really like, like a lot  
towel  
cigarettes  
maybe  
food  
egg  
onion  
who?  
carbonation

taiikunohi  
daikirai  
daikon  
daisuki  
taoru  
tabako  
tabun  
tabemono  
tamago  
tamanegi  
dare  
tansan

たんじょうび

birthday

tanjoubi

## ち

ちいき  
ちいさい  
チーズバーガー<sup>チーズバーガー</sup>  
ちえ  
チキン  
チケット  
ちゃいろ  
ちゃいろい  
ちゃわん  
ちゅうごく

region  
small  
cheeseburger  
wisdom  
chicken  
tickets  
brown (noun)  
brown (adj.)  
bowl  
China

chiiki  
chiisai  
chi-zuba-ga-  
chie  
chikin  
chiketto  
chairo  
chairoi  
chawan  
chuugoku

## つ

つめたい

cold to the touch

tsumetai

## て

て  
ていあつ  
デザート  
てっぽう  
でも  
テレビ  
でんしゃ  
でんわ

hand  
low pressure  
dessert  
gun  
but  
television  
train  
telephone

te  
teiatsu  
deza-to  
teppou  
demo  
terebi  
densha  
denwa

## と

トイレ  
とうめい  
とかげ  
どくりつきねんび  
とけい  
どこ  
どっち  
トマト  
ともだち  
どようび  
とり  
ドル  
どれ  
どろぼう  
どんぐり

toilet  
clear  
lizard  
Independence Day  
clock  
where?, what place?  
which one (two items)  
tomato  
friend  
Saturday  
bird  
dollars  
which one (three or more)  
a thief  
acorn

toire  
toumei  
tokage  
dokuritsu kinenbi  
tokei  
doko  
docchi  
tomato  
tomodachi  
doyoubi  
tori  
doru  
dore  
dorobou  
donguri

## な

なか  
なつかしい

inside  
dear, longed for

naka  
natsukashii

なな	7	nana
ななふん	7 minutes	nanafun
ななめ	diagonal	naname
なに	what?	nani
なにいろ	what color?	nani iro
なにご	what language?	nanigo
なにじん	what nationality?	nanijin
なまえ	name	namae
なんがつ	what month?	nangatsu
なんこ	How many round objects?	nanko
なんじ	what time?	nanji
なんにち	what day of the month?	nannichi
なんねん	what year?	nannen
なんの?	what? which? what kind of?	nanno ?
なんぼん	How many cylindrical objects?	nanbon
なんまい	How many thin and flat objects?	nanmai
なんようび	what day of the week?	nanyoubi

## に

に	2	ni
にがつ	February	nigatsu
にく	meat	niku
にし	west	nishi
にじ	two o'clock	niji
にじゅうごふん	25 minutes	nijuugofun
にじゅっへん	20 minutes	nijuppun
にちようび	Sunday	nichiyoubi
にっき	diary	nikki
にふん	2 minutes	nifun
にほん	Japan	nihon
にほんご	Japanese language	nihongo
にほんごのせんせい	Japanese teacher	nihongo no sensei
にんじん	carrot	ninjin

## ぬ

ぬぐ	to undress	nugu
ぬるい	warm, luke warm	nurui

## ね

ねあげ	a rise in price	neage
ねぎ	green onion	negi
ねこ	cat	neko
ねじ	a screw	neji
ねずみ	mouse	nezumi

## の

ノートパソコン	laptop computer	no-to pasokon
のみもの	a drink, drinks	nomimono

# は

は	tooth, teeth	ha
パーティー	party	pa–ti–
はい	yes	hai
はいいいろ	gray	haiiro
はいゆう	actor	haiyuu
はえ	house fly	hae
ばくはつ	explosion	bakuhatsu
はこぶ	to move an item	hakobu
はし	chopsticks	hashi
バス	bus	basu
バスケットボール	basketball	basuketto booru
パソコン	PC (computer)	pasokon
はた	flag	hata
はち	8	hachi
はちがつ	August	hachigatsu
はちじ	eight o'clock	hachiji
はちふん	8 minutes	hachifun
はっぴょう	an announcement	happyou
はっぷん	8 minutes	happun
はと	pigeon; dove	hato
パトカー	patrol car	patoka–
はな	flowers	hana
はな	nose	hana
バナナ	banana	banana
ハブラシ	toothbrush	haburashi
ハリソン・フォード	Harrison Ford (actor)	Harison Fo–do
はる	spring	haru
はん	half past (:30)	han
パン	bread	pan
パンダ	panda	panda

# ひ

ビーフ	beef	bi–fu
ひがし	east	higashi
ぴかぴか	shiny	pikapika
ひこうき	airplane	hikouki
ピザ	pizza	piza
ひだり	left	hidari
ひつじ	sheep	hitsuji
ひま	free time	hima
ひらめ	halibut	hirame
ピンク	pink	pinku

# ふ

ふうふ	married couple	fuufu
フォーク	fork	fo–ku
ふく	clothing, clothes	fuku
ぶた	pig	buta
ぶどう	grapes	budou

ふとん  
ふね  
ブラッド・ピット  
ふるい  
フルーツ  
プレゼント  
ぶんかのひ

futon  
ship; boat  
Brad Pitt (actor)  
old  
fruit  
present, gift  
Culture Day

futon  
fune  
Braddo Pitto  
furui  
furu-tsu  
purezento  
bunkanohi

## へ

へいたい  
ベッド  
へび  
ペン

soldier  
bed  
snake  
pen

heitai  
beddo  
hebi  
pen

## ほ

ぼく  
ほし  
ほしい  
ポテト  
ポテト  
ほん

I, me (males only)  
star (in the sky)  
want  
French fries  
potato  
book

boku  
hoshi  
hoshii  
poteto  
poteto  
hon

## ま

まくら  
まぐろ  
まど  
まね  
まる

pillow  
tuna  
window  
imitation  
circle, zero

makura  
maguro  
mado  
mane  
maru

## み

みかん / オレンジ  
みぎ  
みず  
みずいろ  
みずを のむ  
みそしる  
みどり  
みなみ  
みみ  
ミルク

orange (fruit)  
right  
water  
light blue  
to drink water  
miso soup  
green  
south  
ear  
milk

mikan / orenji  
migi  
mizu  
mizuiro  
mizuwo nomu  
misoshiru  
midori  
minami  
mimi  
miruku

## む

むずかしい  
むね  
むらさき

difficult  
chest  
purple

muzukashii  
mune  
murasaki

## め

め  
めいし  
めがね  
めじるし  
めずらしい  
めだつ  
メニュー

eye  
business card  
glasses  
landmark  
rare (adj.)  
to stand out  
menu

me  
meishi  
megane  
mejirushi  
mezurashii  
medatsu  
menyu-

## も

もうふ  
もくじ  
もくようび  
もしもし  
もちろん  
もも

blanket  
contents  
Thursday  
hello (on the phone)  
of course  
peach

moufu  
mokuji  
mokuyoubi  
moshimoshi  
mochiron  
momo

## や

やさい  
やすみ  
やね

vegetable  
day off, break  
roof

yasai  
yasumi  
yane

## ゆ

ゆうえんち  
ゆび

fun park  
finger

yuuenchi  
yubi

## よ

ようちえん  
よじ  
よしお  
よん  
よんじゅうごふん  
よんじゅっ�ん  
よんぶん

kindergarten  
four o'clock  
a common boy's first name  
4  
45 minutes  
40 minutes  
4 minutes

youchien  
yoji  
Yoshio  
yon  
yonjuugofun  
yonjuppun  
yonpun

## ら

ライオン  
らいげつ  
らいしゅう  
らいねん  
らくがき  
ラスベガス  
らんぼう

lion  
next month  
next week  
next year  
graffiti  
Las Vegas  
violence

raion  
raigetsu  
raishuu  
rainen  
rakugaki  
rasu begasu  
ranbou

## り

りゅう  
りょこう  
りんご

a reason  
travel  
apple

riyuu  
ryokou  
ringo

## れ

れい  
れいぞうこ  
レストラン  
レタス  
レモン  
れんらく

zero, 0  
refrigerator  
restaurant  
lettuce  
lemon  
contact

rei  
reizouko  
resutoran  
retasu  
remon  
renraku

## ろ

ろうか  
ろうじん  
ろく  
ろくがつ  
ろくじ  
ろくじゅっ�ん  
ロサンゼルス  
ろっぁん  
ロブスター

hallway  
old person  
6  
June  
six o'clock  
60 minutes  
Los Angeles  
6 minutes  
lobster

rouka  
roujin  
roku  
rokugatsu  
rokugi  
rokujuppun  
rosanzerusu  
roppun  
robusta-

## わ

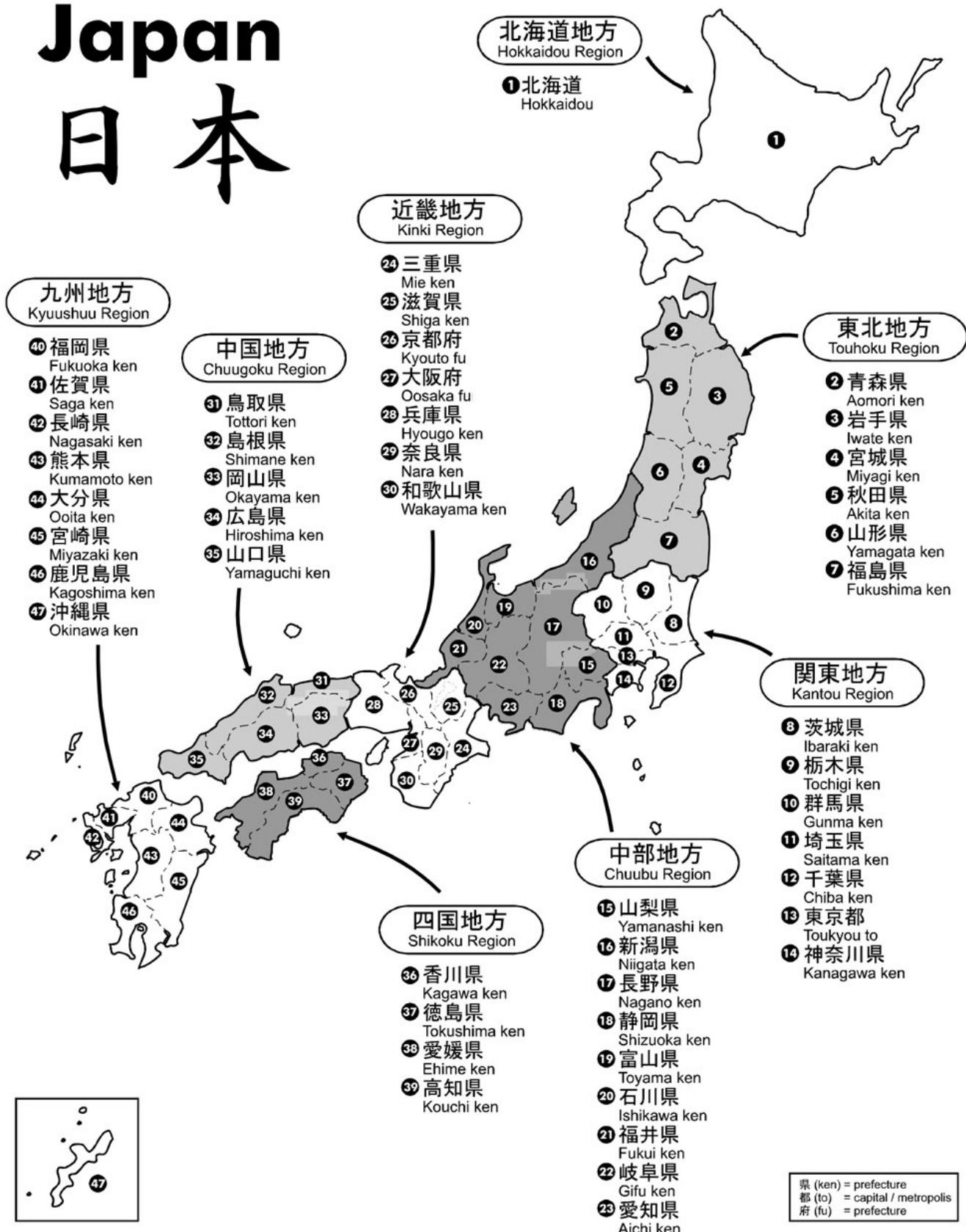
わかる  
わすれもの  
わたし

to understand, know  
forgotten item  
I, me (male or female)

wakaru  
wasuremono  
watashi

# Japan

# 日本

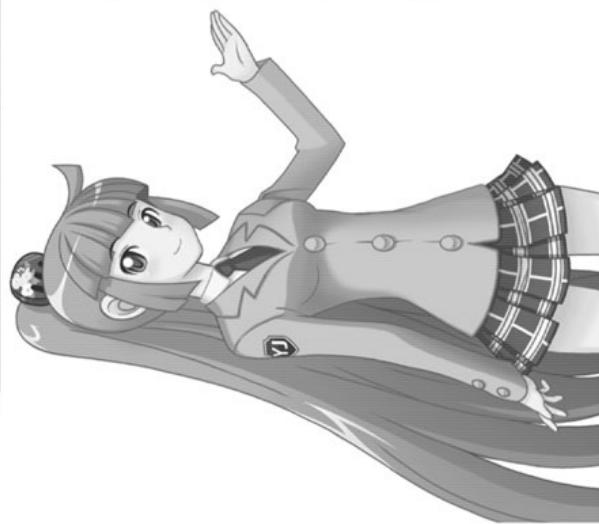




# YesJapan Hiragana Chart ひらがな

わ	わ wa	ら	ら ra	や	や ya	ま	ま ma	ぱ	ぱ pa	は	は ha	な	な na	だ	だ da	た	た ta	ざ	ざ za	さ	さ sa	が	が ga	か	か ka	あ	あ a												
り		り ri		ひ	ひ hi	み	み mi	び	び bi	ひ	ひ hi	に	に ni	ぢ	ぢ ji	ち	ち chi	じ	じ ji	し	し shi	ぎ	ぎ gi	き	き ki	い	い i												
を		る ru		ゆ	ゆ yu	む	む mu	ふ	ふ fu	ぬ	ぬ nu	づ	づ zu	つ	つ tsu	づ	づ zu	す	す su	べ	べ be	へ	へ he	ね	ね ne	で	で de	て	て te	ぜ	ぜ ze	せ	せ se	げ	げ ge	け	け ke	え	え e
れ		れ re		め	め me	め	め mu	べ	べ pu	べ	べ bu	へ	へ he	へ	へ he	の	の ne	の	の no	ど	ど de	ど	ど do	ぞ	ぞ zo	そ	そ so	ご	ご go	こ	こ ko	お	お o						
ん		ろ ro		よ	よ yo	も	も mo	ほ	ほ po	ほ	ほ bo	ほ	ほ ho	の	の no	の	の no	と	と to	と	と to	ぞ	ぞ zo	そ	そ so	ご	ご go	こ	こ ko	お	お o								

りや	りや rya	みや	みや mya	ひや	ひや hya	びや	びや bya	ひや	ひや hya	にや	にや nya	ちや	ちや nya	じや	じや ja	しゃ	しゃ sha	ぎや	ぎや gya	しゃ	しゃ sha	りゅ	りゅ ryu	みゅ	みゅ myu	ひゅ	ひゅ hyu	ひゅ	ひゅ hyu	にゅ	にゅ nyu	ちゅ	ちゅ chu	じゅ	じゅ ju	しゅ	しゅ shu	ぎゅ	ぎゅ gyu	きゅ	きゅ kyu
りょ	りょ ryo	みょ	みょ myo	ひょ	ひょ pyo	びょ	びょ pyo	ひょ	ひょ pyo	にょ	にょ nyo	ちょ	ちょ cho	じょ	じょ jo	しょ	しょ sho	ぎょ	ぎょ gyo	じょ	じょ yo	りょ	りょ ryo	みょ	みょ myo	ひょ	ひょ pyo	ひょ	ひょ pyo	にょ	にょ nyo	ちょ	ちょ cho	じょ	じょ jo	しょ	しょ sho	ぎょ	ぎょ gyo	きょ	きょ kyo



# Other From Zero! Books

